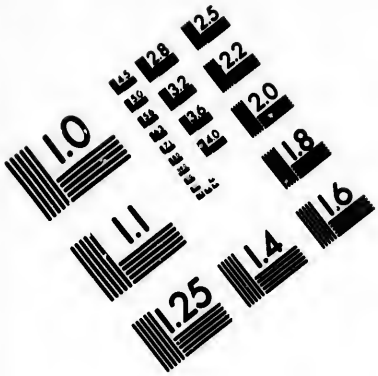


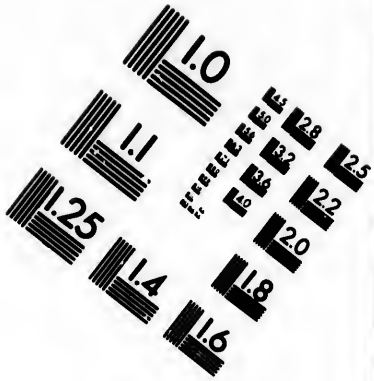
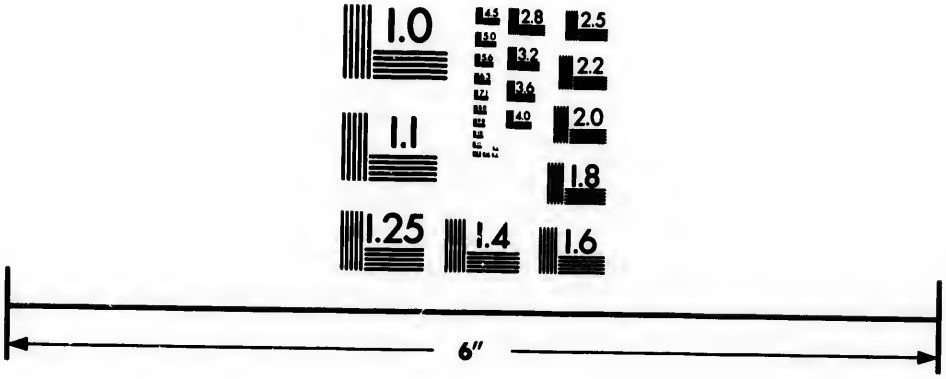


IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic
Sciences
Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

Technical and Bibliographic Notes/Notes techniques et bibliographiques

The Institute has attempted to obtain the best original copy available for filming. Features of this copy which may be bibliographically unique, which may alter any of the images in the reproduction, or which may significantly change the usual method of filming, are checked below.

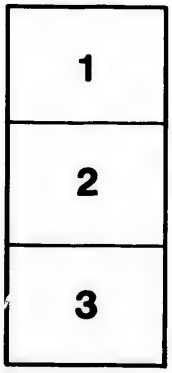
L'Institut a microfilmé le meilleur exemplaire qu'il lui a été possible de se procurer. Les détails de cet exemplaire qui sont peut-être uniques du point de vue bibliographique, qui peuvent modifier une image reproduite, ou qui peuvent exiger une modification dans la méthode normale de filmage sont indiqués ci-dessous.

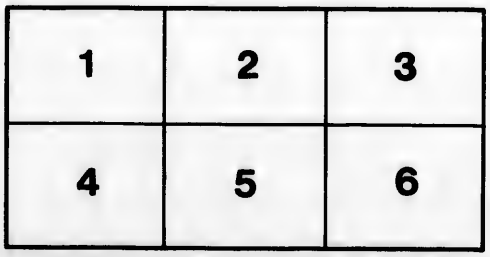
- [ ] Coloured covers/ Couverture de couleur
- [ ] Covers damaged/ Couverture endommagée
- [ ] Covers restored and/or laminated/ Couverture restaurée et/ou pelliculée
- [ ] Cover title missing/ Le titre de couverture manque
- [ ] Coloured maps/ Cartes géographiques en couleur
- [ ] Coloured ink (i.e. other than blue or black)/ Encre de couleur (i.e. autre que bleue ou noire)
- [ ] Coloured plates and/or illustrations/ Planches et/ou illustrations en couleur
- [ ] Bound with other material/ Relié avec d'autres documents
- [ ] Tight binding may cause shadows or distortion along interior margin/ La reliure serrée peut causer de l'ombre ou de la distortion le long de la marge intérieure
- [ ] Blank leaves added during restoration may appear within the text. Whenever possible, these have been omitted from filming/ Il se peut que certaines pages blanches ajoutées lors d'une restauration apparaissent dans le texte, mais, lorsque cela était possible, ces pages n'ont pas été filmées.
- [ ] Additional comments:/ Commentaires supplémentaires:

- [ ] Coloured pages/ Pages de couleur
- [ ] Pages damaged/ Pages endommagées
- [ ] Pages restored and/or laminated/ Pages restaurées et/ou pelliculées
- [x] Pages discoloured, stained or foxed/ Pages décolorées, tachetées ou piquées
- [ ] Pages detached/ Pages détachées
- [x] Showthrough/ Transparence
- [ ] Quality of print varies/ Qualité inégale de l'impression
- [ ] Includes supplementary material/ Comprend du matériel supplémentaire
- [ ] Only edition available/ Seule édition disponible
- [ ] Pages wholly or partially obscured by errata slips, tissues, etc., have been refilmed to ensure the best possible image/ Les pages totalement ou partiellement obscurcies par un feuillet d'errata, une pelure, etc., ont été filmées à nouveau de façon à obtenir la meilleure image possible.

This item is filmed at the reduction ratio checked below/
Ce document est filmé au taux de réduction indiqué ci-dessous.

10X		14X		18X		22X		26X		30X	
					✓						
	12X		16X		20X		24X		28X		32X





G. WASHINGTON.

½ calf wint

THE HISTORY OF THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION;

IN SCRIPTURE STYLE.

TO WHICH IS ADDED,

THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE,

THE

CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA,

AND THE

INTERESTING FAREWELL ADDRESS

OF

GENERAL WASHINGTON.

FREDERICK COUNTY, MD.

Printed and Published by MATTHIAS BARTGIS,

AT PLEASANT DALE PAPER MILL.

1823.

Something calculated to keep alive the spirit of '75 and '76, which actuated the defenders of our country in that critical period which "tried men's souls."

TO THE PUBLIC.

THIS volume will be found on an attentive perusal to be mixed with an equal degree of profit and delight. In its style there is something so singular and original, and at the same time so very different from the common form of writing that it cannot fail to please.

It is one of the most useful Books which preceptors could recommend to their pupils, because they will thereby be enabled to learn what their forefathers did for them, whilst it instils into their youthful minds so many instances of unshaken fidelity—so many proofs of pure unadulterated virtue, by which our INDEPENDENCE was secured.

The subject matter is a sufficient recommendation, without the necessity of particularly pointing out its merits and beauties.—It was written shortly after the glorious American contest with Great Britain, when the pleasing recollection of all the incidents appertaining to that great event, were still fresh on the mind of its venerable and patriotic author; every transaction is detailed in harmonious order, and in a simplicity of style, that renders it perfectly familiar to every capacity.

It is presumed every genuine American will be desirous of perpetuating the remembrance of those transactions which led to the establishment of the *Liberty* of his *Country*.

Being written in the manner of *ancient history*, facts alone are noticed, divested of every thing of a speculative nature.—This renders it both impartial and intelligible, and enables the author, to give an ample delineation of the most minute events in a very concise manner.—

Thus then, this little compendium of *American History* rivets a complete relation of *all* the important transactions which attended the *Revolutionary War*, calculated to gratify every class of readers.—

To the hoary headed veteran, it will prove a more chast and pleasing remembrance—the veteran, who, in the sacred cause of virtuous freedom, endured a part of the toils which rendered this history so interesting, so glorious to America.—Even the well read historian cannot fail, to be pleased with the simplicity, the elegance, and energy of the language in which this work is couched. To the rising generation, it is a subject well calculated to promote their improvement, and to inspire them with a love of dear bought *Liberty*, without the unsullied possession of which that intellectual animal, Man, is a mere cypher.

To this history are added, the Declaration of Independence, the Constitution of the United States, and the Farewell Address of the Father of his Country, Gen. GEORGE WASHINGTON.—Those papers make the Book more useful to all classes of society, and being so, every person therefore ought to have this work in possession.

I remain the Publics obedient Servant,

M. BARTGIS.

August 4th, 1823.

CONTENTS.

TO WHICH IS ADDED,

THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION, IN SCRIPTURE STYLE:

CHAP. I.

The East-India Company ship their Tea to America, charged with a Duty, for the purpose of raising a Revenue.

IN the thirteenth year of the reign of *George* the king, whose dominions extended from the island of Britain to the uttermost parts of the earth!

2. The same year the king made a decree to tax the people of the provinces in the land of Columbia, for they had paid no tribute to the king, neither they nor their forefathers.

3. Nevertheless, they gave the king every year a free-will offering (not as tributaries) for they were freemen, and were never in bondage to any:

4. Neither were they seditious to the interest of Cæsar, they loved the king, and meddled not with those who were given to change: his enemies were their enemies, and they fought the battles of the king.

5. And the decree went forth from White-

hall (the palace,) and it was sealed with the king's signet.

6. And the governors of the provinces were commanded to make the thing known to the people.

7. Now when the people of the provinces had seen the writing of the decree, and knew that it was sealed with the king's signet, they were sorely grieved, and there was a very great murmuring, the sound thereof was like the rushing of mighty waters!

8. And there were at that time a company of merchants in the town of Lud, * that ancient city, who had a navy of ships that went once in three years to a far country to traffic with the merchants of the East for the Indian weed.

9. And the merchants sold the weed to the people of the kingdom of Britain at a certain price, and it brought much wealth into the treasury of the king.

10. Notwithstanding it was no better than the herbage of the field, or the hysop which groweth in the garden of the husbandman; yet the people loved to have it so.

11. Now the women of the land put the weed into fine earthen vessels, and they put water into the vessels, and they poured out drink offerings thereof into cups of enamel work; and it was their morning and evening potation.

12. And the merchants who trafficked in the Indian weed, spake before the king and said,

13. Thou O King! hast made a decree, that the people of the provinces in the land of Columbia, shall pay tribute to the king in like manner as we do here in Britain.

* London anciently called Lud, after a king of that name.

14. Be it known unto thee O King! that our store-houses are filled with the Indian weed, by the gains thereof the strength of thy kingdom is greatly increased.

15. Nevertheless the people of this thy realm of Britain, are not able to consume the one half of that which now is in our store-houses, before the ships will arrive from the country of the East; so the merchants will suffer loss, and the revenue of the king will fail:

16. Now if it please the king, let the ships of the merchants be laden therewith, and let them be sent to the land of Columbia, to the people of the provinces, that they may buy thereof, and pay a tribute to the king over and above the price of the merchants.

17. For lo! thy servants have heard they inhabit a fat land! a land of corn and wine, that bringeth forth fruit in its season, and where all the fruits of the forest do grow!

18. And moreover it hath been told thy servants, that they drink out of vessels of gold and vessels of silver! which is not seemly for any to do except it be the servants of the king, whom he hath set over the realm, and dignified with great honor.

19. And the sayings of the merchants pleased the king and his nobles; and he commanded that it should be even so as the merchants had desired.

20. Then were all the store-houses set open, and the Indian weed was brought forth in chests made of the fir-tree, and the chests were lined with broad sheets of lead, to preserve the weed from the waters.

21. And the chests were put upon carriages

that were part of wood, and part of iron, and horses were put to the carriages, (now there were no such carriages in the days of Solomon.)

22. And they went by the way of the street of the city, until thou comest to the tower of Lud, which looketh towards the river, where was a fair haven for ships.

23. Now when the ships had taken in their lading, the mariners spread their sails to the wind, and unloosed their rudder-bands, and launched out into the great deep; and after they had set a compass, they steered a strait course to the land of Columbia, that lieth to the westward of Britain, twenty-four thousand furlongs.

CHAP. II

The Tea arrives on the coast of America, and is destroyed at Boston. The port of Boston is shut up.

AND it came to pass, when it was known to the people of the provinces, what had been done in the island of Britain, and that the merchant ships had sailed.

2. They were greatly moved at the report thereof; and the moving of the people was like the moving of the tall cedars, when the south wind bloweth upon them!

3. And the people arose, as the sand of the sea for multitude, to oppose the decree of the king; and the number that conspired against receiving the weed, was more than forty thousand men!

4. And when the ships had arrived on the

coast of Columbia, and the mariners were gone down into the sides of the ships; lo! seventeen lion-like men from the province of the East, * disguised themselves like barbarians, † and went into the ships; and it was about the fourth watch of the night:

5. And they cast the Indian weed into the waters of the river, and it was all swallowed up of the waters!

6. Now when the morning was come, there was no small stir amongst the soldiers; and they made diligent search for the conspirators; but they had hid themselves, and the thing was not known.

7. And letters were sent into every province, exhorting the people, far and near, to choose deputies from amongst the people that they might take counsel concerning this thing: and it was so.

8. And it came to pass when the deputies had gathered themselves together, that they also chose other deputies, men of wisdom, out of every province. And they all met at one place; and these were called the great Sanhedrim ‡ of the people.

9. And the rest of the provinces, although they destroyed not the Indian weed, as the provinces of the East had done, yet they suffered not the mariners to unlade the ships.

10. Now when the captains of the ships saw that the people abhorred the decree of the king, they forbore to unlade the ships, lest a tumult should be made.

* Massachusetts. † Like Indians. ‡ Congress.

11. And when they had refreshed themselves, they departed from the coast of Columbia, and sailed to the island of Britain.

12. And when tidings came to the king of Britain, how that the people of the provinces had refused to obey the decree that he had made, and had destroyed the Indian weed.

13. He was exceeding wrath, and the form of his visage was changed; and he hastily called his nobles, his counsellors, and his wise men, that they might advise together touching this matter.

14. And a certain lord * who stood near the king, who was chief counsellor in the realm of Britain, spake before the king and said,

15. Inasmuch, O king! as the people of the provinces refuse to obey the decree thou hast made; if it seem good unto the king to hearken to the counsel of his servant, then let the king make another decree;

16. And let the writing of the decree be sent to the governor of the king's garrison, in the town of Boston, which lieth nigh unto Salem, in the province of the East:

17. And if it please the king, let the governor, and the captain of the king's ships be commanded, that they take away from the town, the whole stay of bread, and the whole stay of water; the ships and the merchandize: and instead of plenty let there be a famine, and instead of peace, a sword!

18. And when the lord had done speaking, there was a great shout among the people; his counsel was as the counsel of *Ahithopel*, in the

* Lord North.

days of *David*, king of Israel! and he was set over the whole realm, and was next unto the king.

19. And the counsel pleased the king and his servants; and the king made a decree, and sent it to the governor by one of the tall ships of Britain.

20. And when the governor of the town had received the king's letters, he set a watch in the gate thereof: and the captain of the king's ship cast anchor in the river, and no ship could pass that way.

21. Now it came to pass, when the people of the provinces had heard that their brethren in the town were in a great strait, they sent to speak comfortable words unto them, and gave them goodly gifts.

22. And the great council of the provinces, even the great Sanhedrim of the people, wrote a petition to the king, wherein they besought him, not to cast off his people, for they were his own inheritance; but that he would look towards them as in times past.

23. And the petition was given to *Benjamin*, * to give to the king: now this *Benjamin* was a wise man, and his name was much set by amongst the people; he exceeded all the ancients in wisdom and knowledge.

24. He taught the people the hidden mysteries of nature, which had lain hid from the foundation of the world, and which our fathers knew not!

* Doctor Franklin.

CHAP. III.

Dr. Franklin presents the Petition of Congress to the Parliament of Great Britain.

AND when *Benjamin* came into the great council of the kingdom, the eyes of all the people were fastened upon him!

2. The princes refrained talking, and the nobles held their peace! they were struck dumb at the wisdom of his words, and they laid their hands upon their mouths!

3. Twice they essayed to speak, yea thrice; but were confounded! for they could not resist the wisdom of his sayings; for an excellent spirit was in him.

4. Howbeit, they had determined before hand, that the petition of the people of the provinces should not be regarded, for the chief counsellor of the kingdom favoured it not.

5. Now there were many in the kingdom at that time, who were fed by the king, and were maintained by his bounty.

6. These men were like the locusts of Egypt, they devoured every goodly thing, yea, they were like the wolves of the evening hunting for their prey.

7. Now these men watched the words of the chief counsellor, whatsoever he said, they said; they were like the passive clay in the hands of the potter.

8. And the petition was rejected by the king and the great council of the kingdom, for it was determined to make war upon the people of the provinces, that they might be brought under the yoke.

9. And soldiers were sent from the land of Hibernia, and from places beyond the sea, and *Thomas* * was appointed governor in the province of the East.

10. He was also captain of the host of the men of Britain that were in the town of Boston, and he strengthened himself in the town, and caused battlements to be built.

11. Now while these things were doing in the land of Columbia, there were certain men in the city of Lud, the chief city of the kingdom of Britain.

12. They were men who loved peace, and were zealous to make up the breach betwixt the king and the people, and to heal the wounds the enemy had made.

13. They met at the house of *John* † the physician; now this *John* was a worthy man, and beloved by the king and his chief servants.

14. *David* ‡ also who was of the seed royal, a wise man, and one that loved peace; these two men held a secret council with *Benjamin* at the house of *John* the physician.

15. They reasoned together about the affairs of the provinces, and balanced in their minds things present and things to come: they were guided by wisdom, and the words of their mouths distilled as the small rain upon the tender grass.

16. Yet they could not withstand the torrent of opposition, for the god of this world had blinded the eyes of the great council of the kingdom; and there were of them, who burned

* General Gage.

† Dr. Fothergill.

‡ David Barclay, related to the family of the Stewarts.

incense at the altar of Mammon, and followed after filthy lucre.

17. And *Benjamin* seeing that the time of his departure from the kingdom of Britain was at hand, he took leave of his friends and went into a ship that was going to the land of Columbia, the place of his nativity.

18. And it came to pass, when the ship had arrived, and it was known to the people of the provinces that *Benjamin* their brother was returned from the island of Britain, that there was a great rejoicing throughout the whole land.

19. And he came to Philadelphia, which by interpretation signifieth the city of Love; it was the chief city of the provinces; and the wise men of the city led him to the great Sanhedrim of the people, and he sat in a chief seat.

20. And *Benjamin* arose upon his feet, and he rehearsed to the Sanhedrim all that he had heard and seen in the island of Britain, and in the great council of the kingdom: and moreover he told them that the chief counsellor favoured them not.

21. Now when *Benjamin* had done speaking in the Sanhedrim, and the council had consulted upon the words that fell from his mouth, they took courage, and they set at naught the big swelling words of the lord of the realm of Britain.

CHAP. IV.

General Gage sends a party to destroy the Military Stores at Concord. The first Commencement of Hostilities at Lexington.

AND it came to pass, that *Thomas*, captain of the host of the king of Britain, privately sent a chosen band of men, about the eleventh hour of the night, to a place called in the Italian tongue, Concordia, * to destroy the storehouses of the people, and the implements for war.

2. Yet notwithstanding it was the night season, when the soldiers set out, and the governor kept a strict watch, yet the people of the province had notice thereof.

3. And there assembled together of people of the province, three score and ten persons, and the soldiers of the king of Britain, were eight hundred valiant men.

4. And when the soldiers saw that the people of the province were collected together, they shouted with a great shout, and as they shouted they shot at the people of the province, and it was said that some of the people were slain.

5. And it came to pass, that *John*, † captain of a company of the province, when he heard the shouting of the men of war, that he armed himself and ran, and about four hundred men followed after him to the battle.

6. And they overtook the soldiers of the king of Britain, at a place called in the vernacular

* Concord.

† Major Butler.

tongue, Lexington; and they fought with them there; and the soldiers fled by the highway of the country; and *John* and the men who were with him, followed hard after them, warring as they went, until thou comest to the Mountain * that looketh towards the town:

7. And the men of Britain were very weary and chafed in their minds; and it was about the going down of the sun when they ascended the mountain; and they rested there that night.

8. And on the morrow they passed over the river and went into the town; and the number of the slain of the men of Britain were three score and five persons; and there fell of the people of the provinces two score and ten men.

9. And it came to pass when it was known throughout the land of Columbia, that some of the people of the provinces were slain by the soldiers of the king of Britain;

10. That the leaders of the people cried out saying: What part have we in *George*, or what inheritance in the house of Brunswick? lo! he hath cast us off as aliens to his house, and deal eth with us as with enemies.

11. Then the people strengthened themselves greatly, and encouraged one another to fight manfully for their country, their wives and their little ones.

12. And the people accustomed themselves to the exercises of war; and instead of the voice of melody and the songs of gladness, the sound of the trumpet and the shouting of the warriors were heard.

13. Yet, notwithstanding, the great counc

* Bunker's-hill.

of the provinces, even the great Sanhedrim of the people, again besought the king of Britain, that he would grant them peace, and call back his army from their borders;

14. But he was deaf to all their cries, and the lord, the chief counsellor of Britain, when he was told, that some of the servants of the king had been slain by the people in the land of Columbia;

15. That he was exceedingly wrath, and he said, Lo! these men want only to gain time to strengthen themselves for the battle—they cry peace, peace, and war is in their hearts.

16. But let the king now send over another army greater than the first, and let the ablest captains of the host of Britain be sent over to the land of Columbia, that they may make an end at once.

17. And moreover he said, Is not the confederacy of the rebellious provinces, as tho' a man made a rope with the sand that is on the sea shore, which when it is broken will never unite again?

18. And another lord *, said on this wise, are not the people of the provinces like unto the wild roe upon the mountains, that fleeth before the hunters? one man of the army of Britain will chase an hundred, will put ten thousand to flight.

19. And it was so, that the king hearkened to the voice of the chief counsellor, and he ordered the captains of the host to muster an army

* Lord Sandwich.

to go to the land of Columbia, to subdue the people of the provinces.

20. And the captains hastened to obey the king's command, inasmuch as the lord of Britain was urgent for the business to be done, and the soldiers were put into the ships, with all instruments for war.

21. And when the ships were ready, and had taken in their lading, they hoisted up their anchors, and loosed their sails to the wind, and steered their course westward for the land of Columbia.

CHAP. V.

Fresh troops arrive from Great Britain. The battle on Bunker's Hill.

AND it came to pass, after that the army of the king of Britain had gotten safe to land, that the people of the provinces consulted together concerning the war.

2. Now there was a mountain * on a neck of land, that overlooked the town, and the people of the provinces desired to have it for a place of defence, and essayed to take possession thereof by subtility.

3. And they went up to the top of the mountain, and they toiled hard all night, and placed battlements on the mountain; and lo! when the sun was risen upon the earth, the captains of the host of Britain looked, and behold they saw the people of the provinces on the top of the

* Bunker's Hill.

mountain; and they were astonished out of measure!

4. And about the twelfth hour of the day, *Thomas*, the captain of the host of Britain, sent an army to drive the people from off the mountain; and the number of men that he sent, was about three thousand.

5. And the three thousand men passed over the mountain, and there was but a small space between the two armies: and the people of the provinces encamped on the mountain.

6. And they put the battle in array, army against army; and the battle waxed hot, and there fell of the men of Britain, one thousand and fifty-four. And there were slain of the people of the provinces, one hundred and thirty-nine.

7. Yet, notwithstanding the army of the king of Britain gained the top of the mountain, and they built a strong hold there, and placed a garrison of soldiers in the midst thereof.

8. Howbeit, it was a sore battle; and the captain of the host of the people of the provinces, whose sur-name was *Warren*, was slain; and the people mourned for him many days.

9. And on the same day, the host of the king of Britain burned a town * with fire, that appertained to the province, and the people of the town lost all their possessions.

10. After these things, the princes of the provinces, even the great Sanhedrim of the people sent another petition to the king, entreating him after the former manner, but they could not prevail.

11. Then the people of the provinces despaired

Charleston.

of being reconciled to the king, inasmuch as he hearkened to the voice of the chief counsellor their enemy: then they exhorted one another to be of good courage.

12. And the great Sanhedrim of the people, consulted together where they should find a man that would be able to go out before the host of Columbia, and order the battle for them.

13. And they chose *George*, whose sur-name was *Washington*, he was from the south country, and had a goodly inheritance on Mount Vernon, and flocks and herds in abundance.

14. He was a man of war from his youth, was beloved of the people, and his bowels yearned towards them in the day of their calamity! he was also one of the princes of the provinces, and sat in the Sanhedrim of the people, who bore the burthen in the heat of the day.

15. And there were other captains appointed under him; and the names of the captains were these, *Artemas*, *Charles*, *Philip*, *Israel*, *Horatio*, *Seth*, *Richard*, *David*, *William*, *Joseph*, *John* whose sur-name was *Thomas*, and *John* and *Nathaniel*. These were all mighty men of valour, but *George* was chief captain.

16. And the chief captain of the host of the people of the provinces, took his way to the army that was encamped nigh unto the host of the king of Britain.

17. And as he passed along the highway of the country, the chief men of the provinces came out to do him honor.

18. And lo! when he arrived at the camp, he found them, as sheep having no shepherd, every man doing that which was right in his own eyes.

19. And he appointed unto every man his

work; and the people served him willingly, and with a ready mind; for whatsoever he did pleased the people.

CHAP. VI.

General Gage returns to England; succeeded by General Howe. The Americans fit out Privateers. The burning of Falmouth by the British.

NOW it came to pass towards the end of the year, that *Thomas*, the chief captain of the host of the king, was commanded to return to the island of Britain, to give an account to the king, touching the affairs of the provinces.

2. And *William* was appointed chief captain in his stead. Now *William* had a brother * who was a lord, and a valiant man; he went out against the servants of the king of Gaul; for the king of Gaul was formerly at war with the people of the provinces, and with the king of Britain.

3. And the people of the provinces loved the brother of *William*: they fought by his side against the servants of the king of Gaul; and he was slain in battle.

4. And the people set up a statue of hewn stone, and fashioned it with the tools of the cunning workman, after the manner of those days; and it stood for a memorial of his valiant acts.

5. And there was yet another brother, who

* Lord Howe—who fell in Canada in the French war.

was a chief captain in the king's navy; he was also a lord of the realm of Britain.

6. And he sent the ships of the navy to lie in wait for the merchants ships that sailed out of the rivers of Columbia, and the navy of the king of Britain, was spread over the face of the great deep.

7. Now sailing became dangerous, by reason of the ships of the king of Britain, inasmuch as they took the mariners captives, and carried the ships of Columbia to their own coasts.

8. These ships were armed with engines, such as were not known in the days of old: fire and balls issued out of their mouths; and the men who had the charge thereof, could shoot the balls to an hair's breadth! They were the invention of *Satan*, and as it is written in the book of *John* * the sweet singer of Albion.

9. Then the people of the provinces communed together concerning this thing; and the great Sanhedrim of the people sent to the men who were occupied at the burning fiery furnace, that they should make engines like unto the engines that were in the ships of the navy of the king of Britain.

10. And the men heated the furnace seven times hotter than it was wont to be heated, and they cast the iron into the furnace, and lo! it became an engine to destroy men!

11. And the captains of the ships of the land of Columbia, took the engines into the ships, and made all speed to war with the sea captains of the island of Britain.

12. And a captain † of one of the ships that

* Milton's Paradise Lost.

† Captain Manly.

the Sanhedrim sent out, found a ship that was going to the army which was encamped in the town; and the ship was laden with all implements for war, to strengthen the host of the king of Britain.

13. And the mariners were made captives, and the ship was taken into a haven that belonged to the people of the provinces: and when they were unloading the ship; lo! they found great store of the destroying engines; some of them were of brass, and some of iron: and the people rejoiced greatly.

14. And the other captains did even as the former captain had done; and they took captive many of the ships of the king of Britain, with the mariners thereof, and the strength of Columbia was encreased thereby.

15. Now the servants of the king of Britain were sorely vexed, inasmuch as they stood in need of those things that were found in the ships, which the captains of the provinces had taken.

16. And they were filled with wrath, and lusted after revenge; for they were chaffed in their minds as a bear robbed of her whelps. And it came to pass, that a sea captain of the navy of the king of Britain, burned a town * that lay nigh unto the sea coast.

* Falmouth.

CHAP. VII.

Colonels Allen and Arnold surprise Ticonderoga. Subsequent operations in Canada.

NOW there was a strong hold, called in the French tongue, Ticonderoga; and there was a garrison of soldiers in the hold, who were the servants of the king of Britain; and the people of the provinces desired to have it for a possession.

2. And they sent *Ethan* * and *Benedict*, † two lion-like men, towards the hold; and there followed after them two hundred and seventy men, ‡ whose dwellings were in the mountains, and they were all valiant men.

3. And it was about the third watch of the night when *Ethan* and *Benedict* came against the hold. Now there was a river §, betwixt them and the strong hold.

4. And about the cock-crowing, the two captains, *Ethan* and *Benedict* took with them four score and three men and passed over the river; and they gat into the hold before the governor thereof had arisen from his couch, for his eyes were yet heavy with sleep.

5. And when the governor opened his eyes, lo! he saw *Ethan* and *Benedict* had gotten into the hold; and he demanded of them by what authority they did these things, and who gave them that authority.

* Colonel Ethan Allen.

† General Arnold.

‡ Green Mountain Boys.

§ Lake Champlain.

6. Then *Ethan* raised his voice aloud and said, Our authority is from the *Great Jehovah* and the princes of the provinces, even the great Sanhedrim of the people, whose servants we are.

7. Then the governor's heart melted within him, when he heard the voice of *Ethan;* and he delivered up the strong hold with the garrison thereof, to the two captains, *Ethan* and *Benedict;* and the garrison were made captives.

8. And it came to pass that when the great Sanhedrim of the people were told of the valiant acts of *Ethan* and *Benedict,* they rejoiced in secret at the zeal of the two captains.

9. But, inasmuch as they desired to make a covenant of peace with the king of the island of Britain, they made a decree that the spoil that was found in the hold, should be conveyed to a place of safety, that it might be ready at a future day when called for.

10. And the heart of *Benedict* was lifted up, and he cast in his mind, how he should get possession of the whole province that lay Northward from the hold: (now the inhabitants of the land were called Canadians) and he wrote letters to the great Sanhedrim, touching the matter; and the princes of the provinces, even the great Sanhedrim of the people harkened to the voice of *Benedict.*

11. Now *Guy,* * who was governor of the province, and servant to the king of Britain, when he heard that the strong hold was taken by *Ethan* and *Benedict,* he thought to have gone against it and to have gotten possession thereof for the king his master.

12. But the men of war who were with the

* Sir Guy Carleton.

governor were few in number, and he essayed to persuade the Canadians and the barbarians * of the wilderness, to fight under the banners of the king of Britain, but he could not prevail.

13. And when the Sanhedrim of the provinces were told that *Guy* the king's governor, was minded to go against the hold that *Ethan* and *Benedict* had taken, they were troubled in their minds;

14. And they said, Lo! if we suffer the governor to establish himself in the hold, the king of Britain will bring against us from the North borders, the barbarians of the wilderness and the Canadians, and we shall be environed round about by the armies of the king, and we shall of a certainty fall before the host of the king of Britain.

15. But let us quit ourselves like men, and let an army be sent Northward to oppose the king's governor, and let the captain of the host be commanded to speak comfortably to the Canadians; peradventure they will be a strength to the host of the people of the provinces, and fight under the banners of Columbia.

16. And *Philip* † and *Montgomery* were appointed chief captains of the army that was sent to oppose the king's governor; and they took their way towards the strong hold, and the host of the people of the provinces followed after them.

17. And when the host of the people had entered the borders of the province, *Philip* delivered an oration upon the inhabitants of the land, even to the Canadians; and the words that

* Indians.

† General Philip Schuyler.

spake were on this wise, that the people of e provinces were not come to oppress, but to liver them from their oppressors.

18. And the natives shewed them no small ndness, they brought of the first fruits of the nd to refresh the army of the people of the ovinces, and many other such things did they do.

19. Now there was another strong hold that as garrisoned by the soldiers of the king of ritain, and it was called St. John's after the perstition of that country; and they essayed gain possession thereof.

20. The hold was very strong, and the chief ptains of the host held a council together, and e greater part advised to depart thence to a rtain island, called in the French tongue, e Isle aux Noix, to the South of the hold out ninety-six furlongs.

21. Now *Philip* was taken sick, by reason hereof he could not go out before the host as other times; and he departed thence, and urneyed onwards until he came to the hold at *Ethan* and *Benedict* had taken; and he ourned there for a season.

22. And *Montgomery*, the chief captain, rerned back again to the hold, for it grieved n that he had left it, lest the soldiers in the rrison should think that he had turned his ck upon them through fear; and he cast a k against the hold, and placed the destroy- engines on the bank which he had cast up.

23. But he could not prevail, inasmuch as black dust * which they put into their enes, began to fail. Now the dust was made

* Gun-Powder.

of nitre and brimstone, and without it, the engines could do nothing.

24. Now there was yet another hold * that was garrisoned by some of the soldiers of the king of Britain, and it was about forty and eight furlongs from the place where the host of the people of the provinces were encamped.

25. And *Montgomery*, the chief captain, sent a captain with a band of men to take possession thereof; but he abode there still.

26. And the captain, and the men who were sent with him, did as they were commanded; and they prevailed against the hold and took it, and found much spoil therein; and amongst the spoil there was found large quantities of the black dust for the destroying engines.

27. And the spoil and the captives were brought to the camp, and *Montgomery*, the chief captain, when he saw the black dust, commanded that the destroying engines should be set to work, and the noise thereof was like the noise of mighty thunders!

CHAP. VIII.

St. John's taken—Col. Allen captured and sent to England Montgomery slain.

NOW when it was told *Guy*, the king's governor, that the garrison were in a great strait, he gathered together about eight hundred men, and he hastened to deliver the garrison from falling a prey to the host of Columbia.

* Crown Point.

2. And it was so, that as he was passing the river, a certain captain, with three hundred men, servants to the Sanhedrim of the provinces, lay in ambush, and they arose up, and fell upon the men who were with the governor, and drove them back again: and the men who lay in ambush, had their habitations in the mountains.

3. Now when the captain of the garrison knew that the governor had been foiled in battle, his spirit sunk within him, and he delivered up the hold to *Montgomery*, the chief captain, and the soldiers of the garrison were all made captives.

4. And it was about this time, that *Ethan* was sent with about four score men, to do a certain thing; and as he was returning, on his way to the camp, the governor came out aginst him;

5. And *Ethan* and the men who were with him, fought with the governor, but could not prevail; and he was taken captive, with three score and eight persons; and there were slain of the men of *Ethan*, fifteen; and the residue made their escape: and *Ethan* was sent bound to the island of Britain.

6. And it came to pass, that *Montgomery*, the chief captain of the host, journeyed onwards to a town, * wherein were some soldiers, who were servants to the king of Britain.

7. Now when the captain of the soldiers was told that *Montgomery*, the chief captain, was coming against the town, he put his soldiers into the king's ships, which had cast anchor in the river: and the men who had fled into the ships,

* Montreal.

hastened down the river, hoping to escape that way.

8. But a captain, whose sur-name was *Easton*, and servant to the Sanhedrim of the people, withstood the ships, and overcame them, and took the people captives, and got much spoil out of the ships.

9. And it came to pass, that *George*, chief captain of all the armies of Columbia, being mindful of his brethren who were warring with the king's governor, and fearing lest the men who were with the captain, *Montgomery*, were too few; he sent *Benedict* and a thousand men with him to strengthen the host.

10. And *Benedict* took his way through the wilderness, and the thousand men followed after him. Now the way was difficult to pass, it was a land of pits and snares, the foot of the wayfaring man had not trod therein, neither were the flocks of the sons of men seen in the way: it was a covert for the beasts of prey, and far from the dwellings of man!

11. And three hundred and forty of the men returned back again, and the residue followed after *Benedict*: and it came to pass, that the bread failed in their vessels, they were famished with hunger, and their tongues clave to the roof of their mouths; yet the spirit of a man was in them, and it sustained them! they pressed forwards until they came to the inhabited parts of the province, and the natives ministered to their necessities.

12. And it came to pass that the watchman on the wall of the city, * looked, and behold he

* Quebec.

saw a multitude of armed men coming out of the wilderness; and he cried aloud, and said, Lo! I see a company coming from the wilderness, and the banners of the great Sanhedrim are amongst them!

13. And *Montgomery*, the chief captain, and *Benedict*, besieged the town round about; and they cast a bank against it; and they planted the destroying engines on the bank that they had cast up; and they essayed to batter the town, but could not prevail, for it was built upon a rock.

14. And *Montgomery*, the chif captain, being minded to take the town by force, sent a messenger to the governor thereof, warning him to deliver up the town with the garrison, that the blood of the inhabitants might not be spilt.

15. But the governor hearkened not unto the voice of *Montgomery*, but shot at the messenger from the wall, and the messenger returned.

16. Then the chief captain, *Montgomery*, divided the host into four bands, and he appointed a captain to each band, and it came to pass in the morning, about the time of the cock-crowing, the four bands moved towards the town; now it was the chief town of the province.

17. And, as the chief captain and his armour-bearer * had passed the first barrier, and were about to enter the second, lo! a ball from the destroying engines felled them both to the earth.

18. And *Benedict* was wounded, and they carried him from the field of battle; but the men behaved valiantly; nevertheless they could not prevail against the governor and the men who

* John M'Pherson.

were with him; and the governor took captive of the people of the provinces three hundred men, and the slain and wounded were four score.

19. And when the governor saw the chief captain fall to the earth, his soul was moved within him—his repentings were kindled—he took the bleeding warrior by the hand, and the tear of humanity dropt from his eye-lids!—he endeavored to raise him from the earth, but in vain!—the vital spirit was fled, and the shadows of the evening were stretched over him!

20. They laid his body upon the bier—they bore him to the tomb—to the house appointed for all the living!—He received the last office of love from *Guy*, the generous foe of Columbia!

21. The princes of the provinces will bewail the loss of their brother! and thy name O *Guy!* shall be had in everlasting remembrance! The scribes of Columbia shall record thy worth, and transmit thy virtues to posterity!

22. The captives thou didst take with thy sword, were sent to their dwellings in peace! their wants were supplied by thy bounty, and the sick were relieved by thy care! The blessings of the poor came upon thee! and the heart of the captives leaped for joy!

CHAP. IX.

Transactions in Virginia during the Administration of Earl Dunmore.

AND there was yet war in the land of Columbia; for the armies of the king of Britain were encamped in the strong holds thereof.

2. And there was a certain governor, called *Dunmore;* he had jurisdiction over a province of the South, called Virginia, which by interpretation signifieth the state of a virgin, and in honor to a queen of the island of Britain, whose name was *Elizabeth,* and she was never bethrothed to any.

3. Now *Dunmore,* the governor, was given up to vain delusions and a reprobate mind; in that he manifested the fruits of wrath, envy and many other hurtful lusts; and all who do such things are in a state of reprobation. Moreover, he thought to rule the people with a rod of iron.

4. And, notwithstanding, his hands were weak, for he had no soldiers under him; yet he was desirous to do something to please the king his master, and gain a little honor to himself; for verily the man was ambitious.

5. And he entered into a league with some mariners who belonged to the navy of Britain, and he covenanted with them, that they should help to take away the black dust out of the storehouses of the province.

6. Then, when the people of the province had notice thereof, they armed themselves, and set a watch; and the governor waxed very wroth, inasmuch as the people were not willing to come under the yoke: and being exceedingly mad against them, he spake bitter words against them, yet the people cared for none of those things.

7. And it came to pass, that the people of the provinces were told that the governor had sent letters to the king's servants in the island of Britain, concerning them, and that there were

words in the letters that ought not to have been there; words of sophistry, tending to strife. And the people were grieved thereat.

8. Now *Dunmore*, the governor, walked not in the ways of *Guy;* but in the ways of *Sanballat* and *Tobias*, the Jews enemy, who hindered *Nehemiah* from building up the walls of Jerusalem, and he made the breach wider between the king and the people of the provinces.

9. Moreover he set up the banners of the king, his master, and stirred up the Ethiopians to rebel: now the Ethiopians were bond slaves to the people of the province.

10. It was not for thee, *Dunmore*, it was not for thee, to break the bonds of the Ethiopians! was it ever known since the days of our forefathers, that any man could bring a clean thing out of an unclean? I trow not.

11. Nevertheless, in the fullness of time, when the people of the provinces are delivered from the oppressions of the king of the island of Britain, surely they will render to every man justice and right?

12. For have not the princes of the provinces, even the great Sanhedrim of the people declared, that freedom is the birth-right of every man that cometh into the world, and that no prince, ruler nor governor, hath power to take it away?

13. They will never forget the rock from whence they were hewn, nor the hole of the pit from whence they were dug: the words of their mouths must not fall to the ground, for where the word of a prince is, there is power.

14. Then will the goings forth of the rulers be, as a morning without clouds, their ways will be established in peace! if they break every

yoke, and let the oppressed go free! Then will Columbia be the praise of the whole earth, and light and truth pervade the whole land!

15. And the rest of the acts of *Dunmore*, and all that he did, and how he burned the chief city of the province with fire; are they not written in the book of Ramsay the scribe?

CHAP. X.

The embarrassments of the King's Troops in Boston—They evacuate the town, and remove to Halifax in Nova-Scotia.

NOW the host, of the king of Britain, lay encamped in the town of Boston, in the province of the East: and the army of the people of the provinces, environed the town round about.

2. And the host within the town were in a great strait; their bread was nigh spent, and their fuel began to fail: and the ships of the island of Britain had not arrived to minister to their necessities, and they were ready to perish, for it was winter.

3. Howbeit, they pulled down the houses, in the town, that were made of wood, and they kindled a fire therewith; then they gat heat; and at last, the ships arrived, and there was great joy in the town.

4. Now there were certain men in the host of Columbia, who were like the heath in the desert, they knew not whence good came. These men spake against the chief captain, inasmuch as he did not force his way into the town where

the army of the men of Britain were encamped.

5. Nevertheless, he bore with these men, and answered them not again; he trode in the footsteps of *Fabius*, who went out against the Carthagenians, and by his wisdom saved the Roman people from falling a prey to their enemies.

6. His wants were many, but he kept the door of his lips, lest peradventure, the enemies of Columbia should hear thereof: the cogitations of his heart were deep and ponderous.

7. Now the destroying engines in the army of Columbia, were idle, for the black dust began to fail: but it came to pass, that the princes of the provinces, even the great Sanhedrim of the people, sent swift ships to the land of Ethiopia, and they bought the black dust of the merchants of Ethiopia.

8. And *George*, chief captain of the armies of Columbia, consulted with the principal men of the host, and spake unto them, saying, Shall we go up against the town, where the army of the king of Britain is encamped, or shall we forbear?

9. Now, when they had consulted together, they spake unto the chief captain, and answered him after this manner; saying, We think it not expedient for the host of the people of the provinces to go against the town; nevertheless, we think it advisable that the army occupy the high places * that look towards the river.

10. And it came to pass, that the chief captain ordered the men who had the charge of the destroying engines, to set them to work; and it was so, that the engines discharged their thunders upon the town.

* Dorchester heights.

11. And when the engines were at work, lo! the people of the provinces gat possession of the high places, and strengthened themselves on the top thereof, and it became a place of defence.

12. Now when the chief captain of the navy of the king of Britain, saw that the people of the provinces were encamped on the high places, he was astonished; and he sent to the chief captain of the host of Britain, and said, If thou suffer the army of the people of the provinces to occupy the high places, the king's ships will be in danger.

13. Then was the chief captain of the army of the king of Britain troubled; and he prepared himself to go out and fight with the host of the people of the provinces, and to drive them from the high places. And the people of the provinces, even the host of Columbia, they also prepared for the battle.

14. But it came to pass, that there was a great storm; and the rains descended, and the floods came and beat upon the host, and the men of Britain were discomfited.

15. And the fear of *George*, captain of all the armies of [illegible], fell upon them, even upon the chief captain and the army of Britain; and they fled in the ships of the king of Britain.

16. Now there were two sects spread over all the land of Columbia; the name of the one sect was whigs, and the name of the other sect was tories.

17. And it came to pass, that the sect of the whigs, prevailed and grew stronger and stronger, and the sect of the tories grew weaker and weaker.

18. Now the tories were counted as the off-

scouring of all things; and they were fain to hide themselves in the clifts of the rocks, and in the thick forests of Columbia; and the soles of their feet found no rest, because of their enemies; nevertheless, there were some worthy men amongst them, who followed not after filthy lucre, nor that which maketh for strife.

19. And when the army of the king of Britain was fleeing into the ships, there were some of the sect of tories who fled with them, and they left much of their stuff behind in the town, and it became a prey to the host of the people of the provinces.

20. And it was so, that when the army of the king of Britain had gotten into the ships, they set sail for the country, called in the Latin tongue, Nova-Scotia, which being interpreted, is New Scotland. And the ships cast anchor in the river, before the chief town of the province, and the name of the town was Halifax.

21. And it came to pass, that the chief captain of the host of the people of the provinces, entered into the town * that had been occupied by the army of the king of Britain, and the people came out to do him honor: and the fame of *George*, the chief captain, went out into all lands!

* Boston.

CHAP. XI.

Fresh troops are sent by Congress to Canada—a large force arrives from Great Britain—The war in that province assumes a new face.

NOW it came to pass, that the princes of the provinces, even the great Sanhedrim of the people, being mindful of *Benedict* and the men who were with him, and fearing lest peradventure they would fall into the hands of *Guy*, the king's governor;

2. That they sent a band of men, to strengthen the host that was with *Benedict*; and sent large money to the soldiers: and the number of the men that were sent, was three thousand: and they were all valiant men.

3. Now it happened, about that time, that a certain woman, who had a loathsome disease,* and whose uncleanness was visible, inasmuch as her skin was spotted by the mere force thereof.

4. She went out of the town, and came into the camp of the people of the provinces, and it was so, that when any of the people came near unto the woman, then the disease fastened upon them, and they became unclean; and the number of them who had the leprosy of uncleanness, were more than two thousand men.

5. And when tidings came to the chief counsellor of Britain, that *Guy*, the king's governor, was shut up in the town, and that the people of the provinces had gotten possession of the strong holds, he was greatly moved, and remained astonished for the space of one hour.

* Small Pox.

6. And after he had consulted with the wise men of the king, he advised that more soldiers should be sent into the province, to the king's governor, that they might drive out from the province, the host of Columbia, and recover the strong holds.

7. Furthermore, the chief counsellor was minded to send a mighty army into the province, that they might be ready to unite with *William*, the chief captain, to invade the whole land of Columbia.

8. Now, when the captains of the host of Columbia, who were in the king's province, heard of these things, they consulted together, and the greater part of the men of war advised to depart thence.

9. And it was so, that when *Guy*, the governor, knew of a certainty, that the army, of the people of the provinces, were about to depart, he gathered together an army,

10. And the governor, and the host of the kingdom of Britain, pursued after the army of the people of the provinces, and lo! when he came to the camp, he found no man there, save a few sick folk, for they had made all haste to depart, and had left behind them some of the destroying engines and other implements for war.

11. And it came to pass, that a mighty host, from the island of Briatin, came in the tall ships of the king, and they gat safe to land, and the governor was informed thereof. Now the number of the men was thirteen thousand.

12. And when the army of the people of the provinces had notice of these things, they were discomfited: nevertheless, they were minded to

take a strong hold that was nigh unto a place called the Three Rivers.

13. And the chief captain divided the host into four bands, and appointed a captain to each band, and the chief captain, whose name was *Thomson*, * was told that there were some soldiers of the king of Britain, encamped about twenty-four furlongs from that place.

14. And it came to pass, as they were on their way to go against the men, another messenger came, and told the chief captain, that it was not a true report that he had heard, for there were no soldiers encamped as had been said.

15. Then the chief captain turned to go against the hold, but the night was far spent, for it was intended that they should get into the hold at unawares, while the soldiers were yet heavy with sleep. And it came to pass, that the chief captain went to and fro in the wilderness, and lost his way, and the sun arose.

16. And when *Thomson*, the chief captain, could not be found, *Arthur* † went out before the host, and became chief captain. And when he saw the army of Britain was coming out against him, he gave command that the host of the people of the provinces should depart thence, lest peradventure, the servants of the king of Britain, should environ them round about.

17. And they fled by the same way that they had taken: and when the men of Britain saw the way that the people of the provinces were returning, they hastened to the river, to a cer-

* General Thomson.

† General St. Clair.

tain point of land, called in the French tongue, Du lac.

18. Now the people of the provinces had left their boats at the point, when they passed over the river, and the soldiers of the king were minded to get the boats from the people of the provinces, and prevent their return.

19. But a certain captain, who had charge thereof, when he saw the men of Britain, he escaped with the boats down the river, to a place called in the vernacular tongue, Sorrel: now this place was occupied by the people of the provinces, and it was a place of defence.

20. And it came to pass, as *Arthur* was going before the host of Columbia, he gat a wound in his foot; and he was maimed so that he could not hold on his way, nor go out before the host as at other times.

21. Now the men of the host, loved *Arthur*, and would fain have borne him on their shoulders, but he forbade them, and encouraged them to hold on their way.

22. And *Arthur* sat down under the thick branches of a tree; and there were certain other men with him, who were so weary, that they were fain to abide with him.

23. And when they had rested themselves, and were refreshed, they arose up and departed thence, lest peradventure, they might fall into the hands of the men of Britain; and it was in the night when they departed from that place.

24. Then they journeyed onwards: howbeit, they were faint, for they had taken no food for two days and two nights. And on the morning of the third day, some of the inhabitants ministered to their necessities: and they held on

their way until they came to the strong hold, where the host of the people of the provinces had gotten before them, and they rejoiced together.

25. And the chief captain, *Thomson*, who had lost his way in the wilderness, and also a few men who had followed after him, were taken captives at a certain house in the province, to which they had fled for refuge.

CHAP. XII

The Canadians complain of the conduct of the army—The naval engagement on Lake Champlain.

AND the army that followed after *Guy*, was strengthened by the soldiers who came from the island of Britain, and it became a mighty host; and they made all speed to follow after the people of the provinces.

2. And *Guy* divided the host into three bands; for he purposed in his heart to environ the army of Columbia round about; but *John*, * having notice thereof, decamped from that place, and escaped to the strong hold that *Ethan* and *Benedict* had taken.

3. And it came to pass, that as the host of the people of the provinces were on their way to the hold, the inhabitants of the land, even the Canadians, came out to expostulate with the people, and said unto them:

4. Hear now, ye sons of Columbia, and attend to the words of our mouths! Suffer us a

* General Sullivan.

little, that we may speak; that we may make known to you the bitterness of our souls.

5. What thing is this now that ye are doing! will ye leave us a prey to our enemies? For lo! when you were hungry, we fed you; and when you were thirsty, we gave you drink! and shall we not be judged for these things by *Guy*? will not he count us as aliens, and as enemies to the king of Britain?

6. So we shall be taken in an evil net, and our flocks and our herds will become a prey, and our wives and our little ones will be cut off from the fruits of the earth! and we shall have none inheritance amongst our brethren.

7. And when the captains of the host of Columbia, heard these things, they were troubled for the inhabitants of the land.

8. But they spake and said unto them, It is not for man to know the hidden things of futurity, nor for the sons of men to tell what will come to pass! if it had been so, then this thing would not have happened unto us.

9. But is it not known unto you, that *Guy* is pursuing after us with a mighty host from the island of Britain, and that we are in jeopardy every hour? nevertheless, if you will cast in your lots with us, and go with us to our own borders, then ye shall eat the good of the land, and verily ye shall be free.

10. Then the inhabitants of the land, even the Canadians, furthermore answered, and said, It seemeth not good unto us to harken unto you in this matter; for our wives and our children are too tender to bear the journey: and moreover, is this not the land of our nativity, and do we not dwell amongst our own people? nay verily,

but we will stay here, and lo! if we perish, we perish!

11. And the captains of the host of Columbia, seeing that they could not prevail, they ceased importuning the people, and journeyed on their way, and *Guy*, and the host of the men of Britain, followed hard after them; and they were at their wits end. Nevertheless, they escaped to the hold called Crown-Point, where they sojourned for a time.

12. Now *John*, was chief captain of the host of the people of the provinces, in that quarter; and as *Guy* was pursuing after the host, it came to pass, that at any time, when the soldiers of the king of Britain, came nigh unto *John*, he turned himself about and fought with them, and stayed them from breaking in upon the host; and the governor was vexed, inasmuch as he had purposed in his heart to make them all captives.

13. And *John* called a council of his captains and the chief men in the host, and they communed together, and the greater part advised to depart thence to the strong hold, * that *Ethan* and *Benedict* had taken.

14. Now it sorely grieved the people of the provinces, that the host of Columbia failed to establish themselves in the province, inasmuch, as they feared that the army of the king of Britain would annoy the other provinces from thence.

15. And it came to pass, that the princes of the provinces, even the great Sanhedrim of the

* Ticonderoga.

people, sent *Horatio*,* a chief captain, and twelve thousand men of the people of the provinces followed after him; and they journeyed towards the strong hold, to strengthen their brethren.

16. Now the hold was nigh unto a great lake, † and they built ships on the borders thereof: and when they were afloat on the waters, they put valiant men into the ships, and the destroying engines were put therein, and *Benedict* was made chief captain thereof.

17. And *Benedict* was minded to take the ships to a certain rock ‡ that was on the borders of the lake: and he spread his sails to the wind, and the ships moved upon the face of the waters, and the men of war who were with him, were impatient for the battle.

18. Now, when *Guy* was told that the people of the provinces had built ships, and armed them with the destroying engines. He, also in like manner, armed some of the ships of the king of Britain. And a man whose sur-name was *Pringle* was made chief captain.

19. And when all things were in readiness they set sail; and went out to look for *Benedict*. Now the ships of the king of Britain were stronger than the ships that were with *Benedict*, and moreover, the number of them was great.

20. And it came to pass, when the ships of the king of Britain were drawing nigh unto the navy of *Benedict*, that the men of war shouted, and the shouting of the warriors was heard afar off.

* General Gates.

† Champlain.

‡ The Split Rock.

21. And *Benedict*, the chief captain of the navy of Columbia, and *Pringle*, the chief captain of the ships of the king of Britain, thirsted for the battle, and the roaring of the destroying engines was heard, and the battle lasted until the time of the offering the evening sacrifice: and two of the ships that were with *Benedict*, fell a prey unto the men of Britain.

22. And it came to pass, while it was yet night, that *Benedict* escaped with the remnant of the ships; and when the sun arose, the chief captain of the ships of the king of Britain, thought to have ended the warfare with *Benedict;* and lo! he looked, and behold the ships were departed from thence.

23. Then the mariners hoisted up the anchors of the ships, and loosened the sails to the wind, and made all speed to pursue after *Benedict* and the men who were with him in the ships.

24. And when the wind sprang up, the ships moved swiftly upon the face of the waters, and overtook *Benedict* in the ships. Nevertheless, some of those who were the foremost, escaped to the hold that *Ethan* and *Benedict* had taken.

25. But *Benedict* seeing that the remnant of the ships could not escape from falling to the men of Britain, he cast out fear, and prepared to fight with *Pringle*, the captain of the ships, if peradventure he could by any means get his men out of the ships to land.

26. And the battle waxed hot, and continued for the space of two hours, and *Benedict* ran the ships to the land, and the ships were as walls and bulwarks against the balls of the destroying engines, and the men gat safe to land.

27. And *Benedict* fearing, lest the ships should

fall into the hands of the servants of the king of Britain, he burned them with fire.

28. Now the banner of the great Sanhedrim was in the ship that *Benedict* was in; and he cast in his mind that he should get a blot if the banner should fall into the hands of the enemy, therefore he tarried in the ship until the fire was kindled; and *Benedict* gat great honor amongst the armed men, and his fame was spread afar off.

29. Thus ended the battle between the two captains; and the winter was nigh at hand, and the soldiers of the king of Britain were fain to depart into their winter habitations.

CHAP. XIII.

The Parliament of Great Britain hire soldiers from Germany, for the purpose of subjugating the Colonies—Unsuccessful expedition against South Carolina—Commodore Parker wounded.

NOW the chief counsellor of Britain was still wroth with the people of the provinces, and he counselled the king of Britain to hire soldiers of the German princes, whose dominions were on the borders of the river, that ancient river, the river Rhine.

2. And the king hearkened to the words of the chief counsellor, notwithstanding there were certain chief men in the council who spake against the thing, yet they could not prevail, and the wisdom of their words was set at naught, and their counsel was as water spilt upon a rock.

3. And the king sent to the princes, and

covenanted with them for sixteen thousand men, to strengthen the host that was warring with the people of the provinces, in the land of Columbia.

4. They were a people of a strange language, and went against the people of the provinces in the simplicity of their hearts, for their leaders caused them to err, and spread a net for their feet.

5. And moreover, the great council of the kingdom made a decree, That at any time, when the mariners of the ships of Columbia should be taken captives by the servants of the king, that they should be put into the kings ships, and be made to fight against their brethren, the people of the provinces; and the ships of Columbia should be for a spoil to the servants of the king.

6. And furthermore, it was decreed in the council, That the people of the provinces should be treated as enemies, and aliens to the kingdom of Britain.

7. Now it came to pass, about this time, that two captains of Britain went out against a strong hold that was in a province of the South; and the name of the first was *Peter*, * and the name of the other captain was *Henry*, † now *Peter* was a sea-captain, and he had a navy of ships; and *Henry* was a chief captain of the host of the men of Britain.

8. And the name of the captain of the men of war, that were in the strong hold was *Moultrie*; he was a valiant man, and the men who were in the hold with the captain, were all valiant men.

* Sir Peter Parker.

† Sir Henry Clinton.

9. And it came to pass, that when the two captains, *Peter* and *Henry*, came against the hold, it was agreed between them, that *Henry* should take the soldiers that were under him, and get to a certain island nigh unto the hold, that he might get into the hold on the other side.

10. And the destroying engines began to utter their thunders, and the battle waxed hot, and the shouting of the warriors was heard from afar, and there was a terrible clashing of arms!

11. And *Henry*, when he saw that there were valiant men in the hold, he forbore to go forth; and the battle continued for the space of ten hours, and the slain and wounded in the ships were more than two hundred men. And it came to pass that a ball from the destroying engines smote *Peter* on the hinder parts, and maimed him.

12. And the slain and wounded in the hold were one score and twelve persons. And the captain of the men of war who were in the hold, gat great honor, and the fortress * was called by his name, to commemorate his valiant acts.

13. And the mariners that were in the ships were commanded by *Peter*, while it was yet night, to slip the cables, and escape down the river; for the ships were much damaged by the destroying engines.

14. And when *Henry* had put his soldiers into the ships, they sailed from thence, and escaped to the haven where the navy of the king of Britain was anchored.

* Fort Moultrie.

CHAP. XIV.

Sir William Howe leaves Halifax, and is soon followed by his brother, admiral lord Howe, with a land force—Independence is declared—The battle on Long-Island.

AND it came to pass, about this time, that *William*, the chief captain of all the armies of the king of Britain, put his men into the ships and departed from the country of Nova-Scotia, for he was weary with tarrying at that place;

2. And he came to a certain haven, called in the vernacular tongue Sandy Hook. And it came to pass, that his brother (who was a chief captain in the navy of the king of Britain) followed after him with the ships of the king: now the soldiers that were hired of the German princes were in the ships, and a vast store of all the implements for war.

3. And they cast anchor nigh unto a certain island, * and the inhabitants thereof rejoiced with seeming great joy: and there was about two hundred men on the island, who gave up their names to fight under the banners of the king of Britain.

4. And the governor of that province and certain men with him, went in an armed ship to meet *William*, the chief captain, and they were comforted with each other; "For as iron sharpeneth iron, so doth the countenance of a man his friend."

5. And when the princes of the provinces, even the great Sanhedrim of the people, knew with a certainty that the king of Britain had hired

* Staten Island.

strangers to come against the people of the provinces, and were told what had been done against them in the great council of the kingdom;

6. Then they consulted together concerning all things that appertained to the provinces, and they made a decree,* and it was sealed with the signets of the princes of the provinces,

7. And the writing of the decree was spread abroad into all lands; and when the host of Columbia heard thereof, they shouted with a great shout.

8. And it was written therein, That the people of the provinces should no more serve the king of Britain; but they should be a peculiar people unto themselves, and that their law-givers should be from amongst their own people. And the bonds betwixt the king and the people were broken, so the people of the provinces revolted that day, and served the king of Britain no more.

9. Now the number of the soldiers of the king of Britain, who were warring with the people of the provinces, were fifty and five thousand fighting men, prepared with all the instruments for war.

10. And it came to pass, that the host of the king of Britain landed on a certain neck of land called Long-Island, after the similitude of the form thereof. Now a captain of the people of the provinces whose name was *John*,† was encamped on the island, and a band of men were with him; and the name of the place where they

* Declaration of Independence.

† General Sullivan.

ere encamped was called Flat-Bush, and it as a place of defence.

11. Moreover, the people of the provinces ccupied the high places, and the army of the ing of Britain sought to gain possession thereof, and they were divided into three companies.

12. And while it was yet night, the host of he king of Britain went forth; and *Henry*, * chief captain of the men of Britain, was inded to get round the mountain where the eople of the provinces were encamped, and ome upon them unawares.

13. And as they were on their way, lo! some f the chief men of the army of Columbia were aken captive; and at the dawning of the day, *Henry* gat up to the high place, and the people ed before the army of the men of Britain.

14. And a certain captain who was a lord † nd who fought under the banners of the great anhedrim, came up to the help of the people, nd fifteen hundred men followed after him.

15. Now there was a hill about sixteen furongs from the main camp of the people of the provinces; and this lord and the fifteen hundred men that were with him, gat upon the hill; and he men of Britain were encamped opposite to he hill.

16. And on the morning of the same day, the Hessians, who were the soldiers that the king of Britain had hired of the German princes; and also the soldiers of the king of Britain, moved towards the host of the people of the

* Sir Henry Clinton.

† Lord Sterling.

provinces and shouted for the battle: and the name of the captain over the Hessians was *De Heister*; and *Grant* was captain over the men of Britain.

17. And the battle waxed hot, and the men behaved themselves valiantly; but it came to pass, that *Henry* came with an army, and the people of the provinces were taken in an evil net; for the armies of the king environed them round about, and they were chased to and fro as a patridge upon the mountains.

18. Howbeit, they fought with the men of Britain for the space of six hours, and the battle was before and behind, and it was a sore conflict; and the number of the slain and the wounded, and those who were taken captive, exceeded one thousand men: and the residue made their escape.

19. And the slain of the men of Britain, were about four hundred and fifty persons.

20. Now *George*, the chief captain of all the armies of Columbia, while the people of the provinces were warring with the host of Britain, passed over to the island, and the residue of the host followed after him.

21. And after he had gathered the host together, he put his army in array and desired the battle, for he was encamped in a strong place; but *William*, the chief captain of the host of Britain, knowing that *George* was a valiant man, and prudent in all matters relating to the war, he declined to go forth.

22. Nevertheless, he was minded to cast up a bank for a place of defence, and to annoy the people of the provinces who were occupied in the strong hold.

23. And *George* perceiving that the chief captain of the host of Britain behaved himself wisely; then he called a council of his chief men, and when they had consulted together, the greater part of the council advised that the army of the people of the provinces should depart from off the island.

24. And when it was night, the host moved towards the river, and the soldiers gat into the boats that were prepared to carry them over the water. Now while the people were moving towards the river, the soldiers cast in their minds what this should mean, and thought they were going against the host of Britain. For the chief captains had kept the door of their lips concerning this thing; lest peradventure the enemy should hear thereof and pursue after them.

25. And it came to pass, that while the people of the provinces were waiting to be ferried over the river, lo! the North East wind sprang up, so that the boats could not pass:

26. But about the eleventh hour of the night the wind ceased, and there was a calm; and afterward the South wind arose, and then the people passed over, and gat safe to the other side.

27. Howbeit, the dawning of the day appeared before all the people had passed over. And about the sixth hour, there was a thick mist over the whole island, that hid the people of the provinces from their enemies. And there was a great deliverance wrought that day.

28. And *Thomas*, * a chief captain, and one of the princes of the provinces, was in the rear guard of the host when they passed the river;

* General Mifflin.

and he brought the men who were with him safe to land.

29. And when the people of the provinces had all gotten safe over to the other side, the mist cleared away. And the host of Britain were astonished out of measure, when they saw that the people of the provinces were fled!

CHAP. XV.

The commissioners declare their power for settling the disputes subsisting between Great Britain and the Colonies.

NOW when the host of the people of the provinces had gotten safe over the river, the chief captain of the navy of the king of Britain, deputed *John*, * whom he had taken captive on the island, to go with a message to the great Sanhedrim.

2. And the words that he put in his mouth, were on this wise: "That, inasmuch, as the king of Britain, in his princely wisdom, had appointed him and his brother his deputies, to communicate his royal will and pleasure, concerning the people of the provinces.

3. "It therefore, behoveth the Sanhedrim, to send some of their wise men to consult about the affairs of the province, before the sword of his wrath is unsheathed."

4. Then *John* took his way to the Sanhedrim, and rehearsed all those words in the ears of the princes of the provinces.

* General Sullivan.

5. And after three days, the great Sanhedrim sent an answer by *John* unto the king's deputy; signifying unto him, that they would do as he desired.

6. And at a convenient time, they sent three of the princes of the provinces: namely, *Benjamin*, *John* and *Edward*;* who went forth to commune with the king's deputy; and they went over to a certain island, and the deputy communed with them there.

7. Now the princes of the provinces, were swift to hear, and slow to speak; and when any words fell from the mouth of the chief captain, they treasured them up in their minds, that they might make a true report thereof, to the great Sanhedrim.

8. And it came to pass, that when the chief captain, even the king's deputy had done speaking; the princes of the provinces departed, and returned to their own place; and reported all the words of the king's deputy, in the ears of all the people.

9. And the deputies of the great Sanhedrim moreover spake, and said, We think it not expedient at this time, to hearken to the voice of the king's deputy; inasmuch, as he hath no power nor authority to do those things which the people of the provinces require.

10. For verily, he spake words which were not convenient to be heard; and the interpretation thereof is on this wise:

11. That if the people of the provinces, will obey the king's commandments in all things,

* Dr. Franklin, John Adams and Edward Rutledge.

then they shall be received into his royal favor; and the sceptre of his mercy shall be extended towards them: their transgressions shall be wiped from his remembrance forever! and the iniquity of their rebellion shall not rise up against them!

12. Now, although the princes of the provinces expected nothing from the communication with the king's deputy; nevertheless, for the sake of some weak brethren, they consented thereto. "Then I said in my heart, Surely they that expect nothing, shall never be disappointed."

13. And the war raged with great violence in the land of Columbia; and many houses in the borders thereof were left desolate, great and fair, without an inhabitant; the fields were unoccupied, and the flocks and the herds were cut off from their pasture!

14. The widows and the fatherless were multiplied! and the sword devoured the young men! it was a day of deep distress! fear and dismay covered the faces of the husbandmen! and the joy of harvest was turned into mourning!

15. Young children asked for bread, and no man break it unto them—they said to their mothers, When will our father return—when shall we see the face of our father?—They looked through the lattice—they saw not him whom their souls desired!

16. Alas! he will never return!—the eye that hath seen him shall see him no more!—he is gone down to the stones of the pit—he fell by the hand of the enemy—the sword of the warrior pierced him through—the sorrows of death encompassed him round about!

17. Tell it not in Lud! publish it not in the streets thereof, lest the daughters of Albion rejoice! lest the daughters of Britain triumph!

18. Let not thy soul be cast down for these things, O man! To die is the common lot of humanity, the great birth-right of the sons of Adam!

19. Therefore, if while thou art struggling through the ocean of this world, rough storms and contrary blasts alarm thy fears, yet remember the voyage is short, and the danger will soon be over!

20. And, although the clouds may gather blackness, and thou mayest be envelloped in the thick mists of confusion; yet be assured, that if thy feet keep in the high way of virtue, brighter scenes will yet cheer thy sight, and more serene prospects will delight, and animate thy soul.

21. And is it not written in the book of *Solomon*, nearly on this wise? That the path of the just man, like the luminous orb which enlightneth our hemisphere, shines with increasing refulgency, splendor and brightness, until it arrive to the meridian altitude of a glorious perfect day!

CHAP. XVI.

The American officers conclude to evacuate New-York—The battle at the White-Plains—Fort Washington taken.

NOW the host encamped in the chief city * of the province; and the chief men of the host consulted together; and the council decreed, That if peradventure the army of the king of Britain, should come against the city, that the host of the people of the provinces should depart thence, to another place.

2. Nevertheless, they strengthened themselves in the town; and cast up places of defence, that they might annoy the army of the king of Britain from thence.

3. Now the city was built upon an island, and twelve thousand men encamped on the North of the island, and four thousand remained in the city, and the residue of the host occupied the intermediate space.

4. And *William*, chief captain of the host of Britain, having gotten all things in readiness, he prepared to take the city; and lo! when he had gotten about three score men to land, some of the people of the provinces who were encamped behind a bank that they had cast up, were afraid, and fled before the men of Britain.

5. And *George*, the chief captain, was sorely grieved when he saw that the people fled before their enemies; inasmuch, as the men of Britain would triumph: and he said within himself,

* New York.

Lo! now we shall be a reproach and a bye word amongst all nations!

6. But it came to pass, on the next day, that the men who had fled before the men of Britain, being smitten in their own minds with shame, came and offered themselves to go forth against the army of Britain.

7. And it came to pass, that some of the army of Britain came out against the men who had offered themselves, and the captain of the men of Britain who came out, was *Leslie*; and the names of the captains of the people who had offered themselves, were *Knowlton* and *Leitch*.

8. And the men behaved themselves valiantly, and drove the enemy from the field of battle: notwithstanding, *Knowlton*, the captain, was slain, and the other captain was wounded; and the men gat great honor, and their transgressions were blotted out forever, from the remembrance of the chief captain.

9. Now when the army of Britain had gotten into the city, and had taken possession thereof; it came to pass, after a few days, that a fire was kindled in the city, which burned with great violence: and the number of the houses that were consumed by the fire, was about one thousand.

10. And it was so, that after the host of the people of the provinces had departed out of the city; they journeyed forwards, and pitched their camp in the North end of the island.

11. Then *William* thought to encompass the host of the people of the provinces round about; and he sent a large company, who took their

way through a certain place called Hell-Gate; and they landed on Frogs-Neck.

12. And it came to pass, that a chief captain who had revolted from the king of Britain, returned from the province of the South, after he had been warring with *Peter* and *Henry*, and the sur-name of the captain was *Lee*; he was a mighty man of valor, and well skilled in war.

13. Now the chief men of the host of the people of the provinces communed together; and the greater part of the council was for abiding on the island, but the captain who had revolted from the king of Britain, thought it not prudent to abide there.

14. He had the tongue of the learned, and he disputed with the captains of the host, and the words that he spake, were words of wisdom that could not be gainsayed; and the chief men hearkened to the words of his mouth.

15. Now there was a strong hold * on the island that was occupied by the people of the provinces: and it was called after the name of the chief captain; and *Nathaniel* † advised that it should be kept for a place of defence; but the other captain ‡ was not consenting thereto.

16. And it came to pass after six days, that the host of Britain departed from Frogs-Neck, and as they were journeying on their way, many of them were slain by the people § of the provinces, who shot at them from behind a wall.

* Fort Washington.

† General Greene.

‡ General Lee.

§ Lee's division.

17. And the residue of the army of the king of Britain also moved forwards, about sixteen furlongs to the North of a certain place, called New-Rochdale, and took the highway towards the White-Plains.

18. Then *George*, the chief captain of the host of the people of the provinces, put the army into array, and the host of Columbia extended from a certain place called in the vernacular tongue East-Chester, nigh unto the White-Plains.

19. And it came to pass, that some of the host of the king of Britain, and some of the people of the provinces, joined battle, and many of the people fell down slain that day: and it was so, that while the men of war were fighting, the people of the provinces moved their stores, and all their stuff from off the field of battle.

20. And the chief captain of the people of the provinces, being well skilled in all matters relating to war; placed the host of Columbia in such a manner, as shewed that he was worthy of being chief captain, and he desired the battle; but *William*, captain of the host of Britain, delayed to go forth, and turned his back upon the people of the provinces.

21. Then the army of the people of the provinces passed over the river * that cometh out of the North country; and they came into the province of Jersey, nigh unto a strong hold, called after the name of the captain, † who had revolted from the king of Britain.

* North River.

† Fort Lee.

22. Now after the host of the people of the provinces had left the island, on which the chief city of the province was built; *William*, the chief captain of the armies of Britain, went against the strong hold, * that was on the island: now there were three thousand fighting men in the hold; and the name of the chief captain in the hold was *Magaw*.

23. And the army of the king of Britain came against the hold, in four companies, the first company came to the North of the hold, and they were soldiers who were hired of the German princes, and their chief captain was named *Kniphausen;* and another company came up against the East side thereof, and the name of the captain was *Mathews*, and he was helped by a certain *Lord* † of the realm of Britain.

24. And the third company had a captain whose name was *Sterling;* and *Piercy*, who was also a lord of Britain, was captain of the fourth company. Now as the first company was going against the hold, some of the people of the province were in a thick forest, and as the soldiers were on their way to the hold, they were shot at by the people who were in the forest, and they were sore galled thereby.

25. Notwithstanding the army of the king of Britain pressed upon the garrison on every side, and the people that were in the hold were hard beset; and after communing together for some time the hold was given up to the servants of the king of Britain. And the men of the garrison were all made captives.

* Fort Washington.

† Cornwallis.

26. And the number of the captives was two thousand and seven hundred; and the slain and wounded of the men of Britain were about twelve hundred persons.

CHAP. XVII.

Fort Lee evacuated by the Americans—The Militia desert in great numbers—General Washington retreats through the Jerseys.

AND it came to pass, that after the host of Britain had taken the strong hold with the garrison thereof, they were like men refreshed with new wine.

2. And a *Lord* * of the kingdom of Britain who was a chief captain in the host, he was also governor of the tower of *Lud*, and had vast possessions in the island of Britain; he went forth against another strong hold † that was in the border of the province of Jersey.

3. Now the men who were in the hold, when they were told, that the governor of the tower of *Lud* was coming against them, they presently departed, and moved to another place. And they left all the destroying engines that were therein, for a spoil to the host of Britain; for verily they were in haste to be gone.

4. Now there were many in the host of Columbia, who were not used to the fatigues of

* Cornwallis.

† Fort Lee.

war, they said within themselves, Lo! now we shall one day fall by the hands of the men of Britain.

5. And seeing that times and seasons are not in our power, it is therefore better for us to escape, for we know not what to morrow may bring forth.

6. They went away * in companies; they were not obedient to the voice of the chief captain: the poison of their example spread itself through the host, and the fear of the men of Britain prevailed in the hearts of many, who had boasted of what great things they would do in the hour of trial!

7. While they were at home in their cottages, they had heard of the fame of the warrior; it was their meditation by day when their hands were in their labor, and in the night season when deep sleep falleth upon man, the visions of their heads upon their beds, were of camps and instruments of war!

8. The phantom of imagination presented to their view, whole armies overthrown by their single arm! The pleasing vision followed them to the field; it haunted them in their occupations; they cast away with indignation, the hoe and the mattock, and grasped the arms of the warrior!

9. But when the blast of war assailed their ears, when they saw the crimson fluid spouting from the wounded warrior, their souls sickened at the sight!—they sighed in secret for the occupation of the shepherd, and the bleating of the sheep was a music in their ears!

* See Ramsay, page 304.

10. And it came to pass, that the residue of the host fled to New-Ark, in the province of Jersey, and the chief captain communed with *Joseph* * there.

11. And he said unto him, If we go to the back parts of Pennsylvania, will the inhabitants help us in that province?

12. Now this was a province that was given by one of the kings of the island of Britain, unto a man whose sur-name was *Penn*, and it was called Pennsylvania, which being interpreted, is Penn's woody country.

13. He was a worthy man, and an excellent law-giver; moreover he was a professor of that light which *John* spake of in the book of the Gospel, unto which if a man take heed as unto a sure guide, it will lead him out of all error into all truth, and finally conduct him to the seats of immarcessible life! where new sources of joy will be opened without end!

14. And *Joseph* answered the chief captain and said, Know thou of a truth that if the lower parts of the province submit to the king of Britain, then the back parts thereof will do so in like manner.

15. Then *George*, the chief captain, furthermore spake and said; We will journey onwards to the province of Virginia, to the county of Augusta; and lo! if we are driven from thence, we will pass over the mountains of Alleghany.

* Colonel Reed.

CHAP. XVIII.

General Howe sends forth a Proclamation—many take the benefit thereof, and make their peace.

NOW when the captain of the host of Britain knew of a certainty, that the people of the provinces were scattered away from *George*, the chief captain, he was lifted up in his mind and said within himself,

2. Lo! now these people will assuredly return back again, and serve the king of Britain; our warfare is nearly accomplished; the hands of the mighty hang down; fear hath overtaken the warriors; they will rise no more; they are as the reed that groweth by the side of the rivers, which boweth down to the earth at every blast!

3. Boast not O mighty man! The people whom thou scornest are afflicted, but not forsaken; they will return in an hour when thou lookest not for them; they will come upon thee unawares, and lay thy glory in the dust.

4. And it came to pass, that the chief captain and his brother, who were the king's deputies, sent letters into every province, warning the people to return, and serve the king of Britain as in days past.

5. Moreover it was written in the letters, That if within three score days, any of the people presented themselves before the chief captain of the host, or the king's governors, and signed a certain writing, then they would do well, and should partake of the king's mercy, and their offences should be remembered to them no more.

6. And the great Sanhedrim were commanded to assemble no more together; but to return and

make their peace while the door of mercy was yet open.

7. And there were many who hearkened to the words that were written in the letters of the king's deputies, and they took of the offered mercy, and signed their names to the written paper.

8. Now many of those who signed their names to the paper, had appeared very zealous against the king of Britain, and had stirred up the people to oppose the decree of the king; and moreover they vilified the name of the chief counsellor of the kingdom.

9. They were unstable in all their ways: their zeal was as the dew of the morning, which soon passed away!

10. Now the sect of the tories were better than these men, for verily they held fast their integrity, and were of one mind and not easily turned.

11. Thus did many of the people forsake the chief captain, who had toiled for their ease, who had left a fair inheritance on Mount Vernon, and needed not that any man should minister to his necessities.

12. In the day of prosperity they were lifted up above measure, and were amongst those, who were foremost to oppose the servants of the king of Britain;

13. But when the evil day came to try the foundations of men, lo! their hearts failed them! and like the grass upon the house top, they soon withered away!

14. Nevertheless there were some who maintained their integrity, and were as the strong

oaks in the forests of Columbia, that feareth not the windy storm and tempest.

15. They followed after the chief captain: the words of his mouth were as a law in their hearts; and the bonds of adversity endeared them to each other.

CHAP. XIX.

The American army retreat over the Delaware—General Lee captured—The Hessians taken at Trenton—The battle of Sanpink Bridge.

AND it was so, that as *George*, the chief captain, was passing through the province of Jersey, that the host of the king of Britain followed hard after him.

2. Now there was a river,* which divided the province of Pennsylvania; it was a mighty stream, and extended from beyond the Blue mountains of Columbia, even to the Atlantic sea.

3. It was a fair haven for the ships of the merchants, who did business on great waters, they sent the wares of Columbia to the North, and to the South, to the East, and to the West, and trafficked with the merchants afar off.

4. And *George*, the chief captain, and the men who followed after him, passed over the river and they were chafed in their minds, as a bear robbed of her young.

5. Now the men of Britain rejoiced with exceeding great joy, inasmuch as they thought

* Delaware River.

the army of the people of the provinces would come against them no more.

6. And it came to pass about this time, that *Ices*, the captain, who had revolted from the king of Britain, was taken captive by some of the soldiers of the king of Britain.

7. And when the people of the provinces heard thereof, they were discomfited, for he was a mighty man of valor, and feared not, neither regarded he the face of any man; and the people thought he secretly inclined to go back to the king his master.

8. Now the host of Britain occupied the towns in the province of Jersey, and they walked to and fro therein, and there were none to make them afraid.

9. And certain sons of Belial, in the host of Britain, went forth from the camp to the cottages of the husbandmen: and they saw the daughters of the land, that they were fair, and withal of a beautiful countenance.

10. They were not restrained by the law of the chief captain, they did those things which are not seemly to be mentioned, nor shall the pen of the scribe record their cruel acts, lest the tears of the violated virgin should be multiplied when she remembers the day of her humiliation!

11. Now in this time of deep distress, when the host of the king of Britain appeared ready to overrun the whole land, the great Sanhedrim of the people expostulated with their brethren.

12. And *Thomas*, * one of the princes of the provinces, and a citizen of no mean city, †

* General Mifflin. † Philadelphia.

strengthened the feeble knees of the warriors; he spake to them in the language of love, and the moving of his lips raised their spirits.

13. Now *Thomas* was beloved of the people; the words of his mouth were as showers of rain on the parched ground in the midst of summer; they were refreshed; they were animated; they shouted for the battle.

14. And there was a town * in the province of Jersey, on the borders of the river; and it was occupied by the Hessians who were hired of the German princes, and the river was between them and the people of the provinces.

15. And the waters of the river were frozen, and there was abundance of ice, and *George*, the chief captain of the army of Columbia, cast in his mind, how he should circumvent the men of Britain, and by what device he should bring down the towering hopes of the enemy.

16. And it was so, that after he had counselled with the chief men who were about him, he divided the army of Columbia into two bands, and they passed over the river while it was yet night.

17. And the first company was commanded by *John*, † and *Nathaniel* ‡ commanded the other company; and the two captains with their companies came against the town where the Hessians were encamped: and after they had made an assault, the Hessians fled. Nevertheless nine hundred were taken captives, and the residue made their escape.

* Trenton.

† General Greene.

‡ General Sullivan.

18. And *George*, the chief captain, entered into the town, and took possession thereof; and there was great joy throughout all the land of Columbia; because the army of the aliens were overthrown and made captives, and the joy of the people exceeded the joy of harvest.

19. And it came to pass, after these things, that the people of the province of Jersey, and from the other provinces round about, flocked to the banners of the great Sanhedrim, even the wild pigeons of Columbia flocked to the stubble of the husbandman.

20. Now the army of Britain encamped on one side of the town, and the host of the people of the provinces encamped on the other side thereof; and there was a brook * of water between the two armies.

21. And there was a high place cast up over the brook for way-faring men, who passed that way: it was built up with hewn stone, and the inhabitants of the land called it a bridge, the name thereof was Sanpink.

22. And the people of the provinces planted some of the destroying engines on the bank of the brook, and the soldiers of Britain went forth to drive them from thence.

23. But it came to pass that the destroying engines gaped upon them with their mouths, and vomited out their thunders; and the soldiers of Britain were smitten to the earth, so that they could no more rise; and the residue made their escape; inasmuch as they could not perform their enterprise.

* Sanpink Creek.

CHAP. XX.

The Expedition at Princeton.—The Americans recover great part of the Jerseys.

AND the two armies encamped nigh unto each other, and the brook was between them. And the host of the men of Britain, when they had kindled their fires, set a watch, and betook themselves to rest.

2. But *George*, chief captain of the host of the people of the provinces, suffered not his eyes to sleep; and he gathered the captains of the host together;

3. And he communed with them on this wise, and said, Know ye not that the rear guard of the host of Britain lieth encamped at Princeton? let us therefore depart while it is yet night, that we come upon them while their eyes are yet heavy with sleep.

4. Furthermore, he spake and said, Let every man of the host be ready with his weapons of war in his hands, and let the destroying engines go out of the camp, and let certain men stay behind to kindle the fires, that the men of Britain may be deceived thereby.

5. And it was so, that when all things were ready, the host of Columbia moved forwards; and the men who were left behind, kindled up the fires in the front of the camp; and the watchmen in the host of Britain, verily thought that the people of the provinces were taking their rest in sleep.

6. Now as the host of the people of the provinces drew nigh unto the town, they were

espied by some of the soldiers of the king of Britain, who were journeying towards their brethren that were encamped at the bridge of Sanpink.

7. And when they perceived that the people of the provinces were journeying forwards, they let in a jealousy that evil was intended against their brethren in the town: therefore they sent a messenger with tidings thereof.

8. Now it was about the dawning of the day, when *George*, the chief captain, drew nigh unto the town; and when the soldiers who were the servants of the king of Britain, saw the people of the provinces, they rushed out of the town to meet the armed men;

9. And the centre of the host of Columbia could not withstand the impetuosity of the soldiers of Britain, but gave way and were confused.

10. And when the chief captain saw the men giving place to the soldiers of Britain, he hastened forwards, and placed himself between the host of the people of the provinces, and the soldiers of the king of Britain;

11. And *George*, the chief captain, encouraged the men to fight valiantly that day, for their country, their wives and their children: then the people turned about, and the men of Britain were fain to flee from before the people of the provinces.

12. And many of the people of the province of Jersey were in the battle, and behaved themselves valiantly: and *George*, the chief captain, was in great jeopardy; nevertheless, he received no harm.

13. And the men of Britain fled to a certain

building, where children were taught after the perfect manner of the law of their fathers: moreover they were taught to speak in foreign tongues! and to cut curious figures on paper! and there were also some stargazers amongst them! Now the building was called a college.

14. And the balls of the destroying engines smote against the walls thereof; and the fear of *George*, the chief captain, fell upon the men of Britain, and they came forth, and delivered themselves up to be captives to the people of the provinces.

15. Now the slain of the men of Britain were about three score persons; and three hundred men were taken captive.

16. And there fell of the people of the provinces, three captains and some others. Moreover a chief captain whose name was *Mercer*, was slain.

17. He was a worthy man, and came from the land of Calidonia, to sojourn with the people of the provinces; and he fought under the banners of the great Sanhedrim.

18. Now the army of Britain, on the morning of the same day, prepared to assault the camp of the people of the provinces, for they wist not that the people were departed.

19. And lo! when they drew nigh unto the camp, there was no man there! and they were amazed beyond measure! Now they had heard the noise of the destroying engines; and they said, It thundered; notwithstanding it was winter.

20. And while they were musing concerning these things, behold a messenger came running

along the highway of the country, and he had tidings in his mouth.

21. And he reported all the things which *George*, the chief captain, had done; and how that the servants of the king were gone into captivity, and some were slain in the battle!

22. Now when the host of the king of Britain, heard these things, the people were sore amazed, and they gaped on the messenger with their mouths, for they wist not what they did, for they were astonished out of measure!

CHAP. XXI.

The British army retreat to Brunswick—Skirmishes with small parties.

AND it came to pass, that the host of the king of Britain, fled to a certain town * in the province of Jersey, which was nigh unto the sea-coast, and they cared not to go forth far into the country, lest the people of the provinces should get between them and the ships of the king of Britain.

2. Nevertheless, a certain captain, with his fifty men went out of the camp, and were made captives by the people of the provinces. They came from the river Rhine, and were called Waldeckers.

3. Now, as some of the men of Britain were foraging in the province of Jersey, a certain

* New-Brunswick.

captain of the people of the provinces came upon them, and the men of Britain fled: howbeit, nine of them were slain.

4. And the captain, whose sur-name was *Dickinson*, and the men who followed after him gat much spoil: for the men of Britain had left their carriages and their horses, laden with abundance of food and cloathing!

5. For they had robbed the threshing floors of the husbandmen, and had taken vast stores of swine's flesh, and flocks and herds in abundance!

6. Now it was common in those days for the people of Columbia, old and young, to eat swine's flesh, yea the mothers would give it to their children, and it was reported that some eat it even on the Sabbath day!

7. Thus the fountain of life became corrupted, and the inhabitants were diseased through the abundant use thereof. Nevertheless, the flesh was lawful to be eaten in like manner as the flesh of other fed beasts.

8. Moreover, many of the people of the land drank of the strong waters * of Barbadoes, that burned like fire, and refused the sweet waters of the brook that were designed for the universal beverage of all nations.

9. And the days of the years of man's life were shortened, and thousands were cut off in the morning of their days!

10. And it came to pass, that some of the people of the provinces, who had fell away to the men of Britain, came forth from the host to plunder their brethren in the province of Jersey;

* Rum.

11. But a captain, whose surname was *Nelson*, fell upon them and took captive fifty persons with their captain.

12. These were the people * who traversed the bye paths in the wilderness of Jersey; they hid themselves in the thick forests! they couched down until it was night; then they arose out of their close places, and like the wolves of the evening, they prowled for their prey!

13. Thus were the calamities of the war encreased! parents were bereaved of their children, and children of their parents! the ancients refused to be comforted, because the staff of their age, the beginning of their strength, was fallen!

14. Trembling took hold on the virgins when they heard the alarm of war, the thunder of the captains and the shoutings!

15. They remembered the days that were past, when they sat under the thick shade of the forest, and hearkened to the voice of their beloved!

16. When their hands took hold of the distaff, and their delight was in the wool and the flax, the voice of lamentation was afar off, and as for trouble, they had only heard thereof!

17. But lo! it came suddenly upon them! as a mighty stream! it overwhelmed them! the beloved of their souls was taken captive or slain by the hands of the enemy! they were strucken through with sorrow, because the hope of their expectation was cut off!

18. These are thy works, O! thou destroyer of man! thou delightest to stride over the field

* Refugees.

that is covered with the blood of the slain; and the last groans of the dying warrior, are more grateful to thine ear, than the music of the shepherds, or the songs of the enraptured seraph!

CHAP. XXII.

Governor Tryon's Expedition to Danbury—Destroys the American stores—His party attacked by Arnold, Wooster and Silliman—General Wooster slain.

NOW when the winter was far spent, and the season of the year advanced when armies go forth to battle, *William*, the chief captain of the host of Britain, sent a certain captain, * with five hundred men, to destroy some stores that were at a certain place called Peek's Hill.

2. And there were some of the people of the provinces on the hill to guard the stores: and when they saw the men of Britain coming against them, they destroyed the stores and fled.

3. And it grieved *George*, the chief captain, when he was told that the stores were destroyed, inasmuch as he had cautioned those who had the charge thereof to remove them to secure places.

4. And another company of the people of Britain, went forth against a town, the name thereof, was Danbury; and the number of the men was about two thousand: and *Tryon*, one of the king's governors, was their captain.

5. And they passed along the high-way of the

* Col. Bird.

country, eight score furlongs; and no man said ought unto them. And the few men who were in the town to defend it, fled.

6. And they burned the houses of all those who adhered to the great Sanhedrim. Howbeit they spared the houses of the sect of the tories, and burned not their habitations.

7. And moreover, they destroyed eight hundred barrels of swine's flesh, and the flesh of oxen; and of fine flour, eight hundred barrels, and two thousand bushels of corn; and tents for the soldiers, one thousand seven hundred.

8. Now while the governor and the two thousand men, were busily employed in the town, three chief captains, *David*, * *Benedict* and *Silliman*, collected some hundreds of the people of the provinces together.

9. And the men hastened after the three captains, and they journeyed about twelve score furlongs; and they were very weary; notwithstanding, they fell upon the men of Britain who were with the governor.

10. Moreover *Benedict* took five hundred men and they moved swiftly on their way, and gat before the governor, and laid impediments in the way of the men of Britain.

11. Now there were nigh at hand, a ledge of rocks, it was a high place, and the governor and his company gat upon the rocks and they shot at *Benedict* from thence; and the beast on which *Benedict* sat was killed; and he was in great jeopardy, being entangled with the furniture of the beast.

* General Wooster.

12. And when a soldier who was with the governor, saw that *Benedict* was in an evil case, he ran and thought to have pierced him with an instrument, and slain him therewith;

13. But *Benedict* perceiving the intent of the soldier, shot at him, and slew him there, and then made his escape.

14. And it came to pass, after this, that the governor journeyed onwards; and the people of the provinces followed after him until the men of Britain gat into the ships that waited for them at an appointed place.

15. Now there were slain and taken captive of the men who followed after the governor, between two and three hundred persons.

16. And there fell of the people of the provinces, about twenty men, and about forty were wounded. And a certain doctor was slain, whose name was *Atwater*.

17. *David* was also amongst the slain, and the princes of the provinces made a decree, that a monument should be set up as a memorial of the valiant acts that he had done.

18. Moreover the great Sanhedrim honored *Benedict* with great honor; and gave him a horse, decked out for the war.

19. Furthermore, the great Sanhedrim honored a certain captain whose sur-name was *Meigs*, and gave him a sword of curious workmanship, inasmuch as he went forth and burned the ships of the king of Britain, and took captive, four score and ten persons; and the number of the ships that he burned, was twelve besides two small ones.

CHAP. XXIII.

Manœuvres of General Howe frustrated—The British army go on board their ships—They land at the Head of Elk.

NOW the host of the people of the provinces pitched their camp at Middle-Brook, in the province of Jersey, and strengthened themselves there.

2. And *William*, chief captain of the host of the king of Britain, came forth out of the town where he had sojourned during the winter; and the van guard of the host of Britain extended to a certain house * where the judges of the land were used to administer to the people.

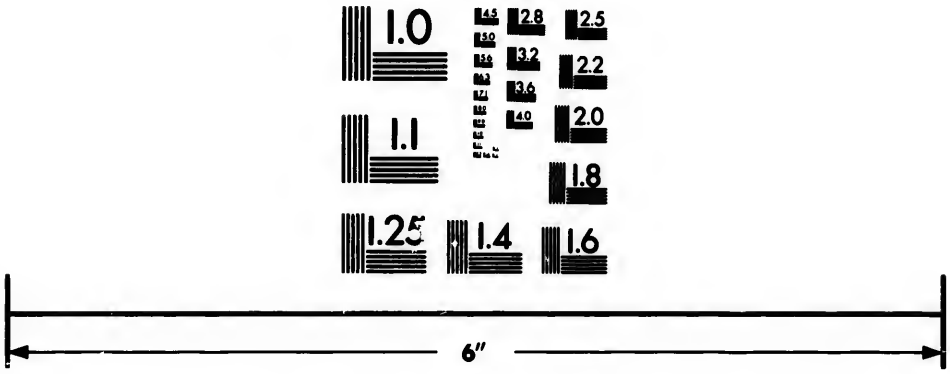
3. Howbeit, they soon returned to the place from whence they came, inasmuch as they were informed that the people of the province of Jersey, were united with *George*, the chief captain, and were come out against them, even a very great multitude.

4. For the husbandmen had left the care of their flocks to the lads of their household; and they thirsted after revenge, inasmuch as the men of the host of Britain had deceived them.

5. For it was so, that when the army of Britain was pursuing after the host of Columbia, that *William*, the chief captain, spake smooth words unto them, and gave them a paper, wherein it was written, that all those who demeaned themselves peaceably should not come to any harm either in their persons or possessions, and this paper was called a protection.

* Somerset Court-house.

IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic
Sciences
Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503


2.8
3.2
2.5
2.2
2.0
1.8
1.0

6. Nevertheless the soldiers regarded not the written paper, but did as they listed, and they spoiled the people; and when any of the inhabitants of the provinces complained thereof to *William*, the chief captain, he turned a deaf ear to the cries of the people.

7. And, if at any time he rebuked the soldiers for these things, his reproofs were like the reproofs of *Eli* to his sons, saying, Why do ye such things, for I hear of all your evil doings with this people; nay, verily, but you do wrong, and it is not a good report that I hear concerning you. Thus reasoned he with the men of war, but he restrained them not.

8. And the host of Britain again came forth, and *William* trusting in the men of war, put his army in array: but *George*, the chief captain of Columbia, thought it would not be expedient to go forth to the battle: so the host of the people of the provinces remained in the camp, and went not out.

9. Now when *William* saw that the people were not inclined to come forth, he turned himself about, and made as though he fled from the people. Then, some of the people who were with *George* followed after the host of Britain.

10. And *William*, thinking he had gained his purpose, suddenly turned himself about: now *George*, the chief captain of the armies of Columbia, also moved forwards; and the residue of the host followed after him to Quibble-Town, in the province of Jersey.

11. And when he perceived it was only a cunning decree of *William*, the chief captain of the host of Britain, he delayed to go forth to the battle; but strengthened himself in that place.

12. So the devices of the crafty were laid waste, so that they could not perform their enterprise.

13. Now when the chief captain of the host of Britain, knew of a certainty that it would be attended with great jeopardy, and the loss of many of the lives of the servants of the King of Britain, should they force their way through the province of Jersey.

14. Therefore, seeing these things were so, he put his soldiers into the tall ships of the king of Britain, and the number of the men who were put into the ships, were sixteen thousand persons.

15. Now *George*, the chief captain, and the principal men of the host, mused in their minds what this should mean, and some said one thing, and some another. And there were divers opinions, for the dark clouds of uncertainty overshadowed the devices of *William*, the chief captain.

16. And after much conjecture, and twenty days were passed, after that the host of Britain had gone into the ships, lo! it was reported to the chief captain of the people of the provinces, that the men of Britain were landed at a certain place called the Head of Elk, in the province of Maryland.

17. Then the host of the people of the provinces hastened forwards to meet the army of Britain. Now there were but about eight thousand fighting men that were able to go out to war with *George*, the chief captain.

18. And there were with *William*, captain of the host of Britain, sixteen thousand valiant men, prepared with all instruments for war.

19. Now *William* thought within himself, that if he suffered the soldiers to spoil the inhabitants in like manner as they had done in the province of Jersey, he should get to himself a blot, and his name would be had in execration of all the people.

20. He therefore sent forth written papers to the inhabitants of the land; and it was written therein, that if at any time, any of the soldiers of the army of Britain, behaved themselves unseemly to any of the people, upon notice thereof to the chief captain, they should be punished.

21. Nevertheless, the soldiers did as they were wont to do in the province of Jersey, and the people despised *William* in their hearts; inasmuch as he being chief captain, could have restrained the soldiers from doing those things.

22. And the army of the king of Britain moved forwards towards the chief city of the province of Pennsylvania; and they took with them the destroying engines, but they left their tents and great part of their stuff with their ships.

23. And *George*, the chief captain, and the host of the people of the provinces, pitched their camp nigh unto a certain ford, * where there was a brook of water.

24. And the host of Britain pitched their camp on the other side of the brook, and both armies prepared for the battle.

* Chadd's Ford.

CHAP. XXIV.

Battle of Brandywine near Chadd's Ford — Successful on the part of the British.

AND about the dawning of the day the army of the king of Britain, moved towards the host of the people of the provinces, in two companies;

2. The first company followed after the captain whose sur-name was *Cornwallis*, and he was governor of the tower of Lud: and the other company remained by the brook with the captain of the German soldiers, whose name was *Kniphausen*.

3. And the first company went along the side of the brook, until they came where it divided into two streams; and when it was mid-day, they passed over.

4. And the other company drew up in battle array, and appeared as though they intended to pass over the brook at a certain place, called in the vernacular tongue, Chadd's Ford.

5. And when the first company had passed over the brook, they moved forwards on the other side thereof.

6. Now the host of the people of the provinces were taken at unawares, and the men of war were discomfited. And they fled before the host of Britain.

7. Now *George*, the chief captain, had been told that *Cornwallis*, the governor of the tower of Lud, was gone back again to unite with *Kniphausen*, the other captain, and he believed the report, that it was even so. Thus were the people of the provinces taken in an evil net, and were fain to turn their backs upon their enemies.

8. And there were slain and wounded of the men of Britain, about six hundred persons: and the slain and those who were missing of the host of the people of the provinces, were about twelve hundred men.

9. Now there were of the wounded in the host of the people of the provinces, two chief captains, the name of the first was *Fayette*, he was a nobleman from the kingdom of Gaul, and had left the land of his nativity to fight under the banners of the great Sanhedrim.

10. And the name of the other captain was *Woodford;* howbeit their wounds were not unto death.

11. And there was yet another nobleman from the kingdom of Poland; and his name was *Polaski*: he was a mighty man of war.

12. He conspired against the king his master, and took him captive from amidst the armed men who were his guards, and out of his chief city where he dwelt.

13. He was like the fierce panther, that abideth in the forests of Columbia! he feared not the face of man, neither regarded he the threatnings of the enemy! the ways of the warrior were open before him, and he strewed the fields with heaps of slain!

14. And it came to pass after that the host of the people of the provinces had fled from the army of Britain, that *William*, the chief captain thereof, essayed to get round the host of the people of the provinces on the right hand thereof.

15. But *George*, the chief captain, perceiving that he was so minded, prevented him. Thus the devices of the crafty were frustrated, so

that they could not perform the things they had devised.

16. Now the army of the king of Britain and the host of the people of the provinces were nigh unto the house * of a certain publican, in the province of Pennsylvania.

17. And the two chief captains put the battle in array, army against army; and the men of war shouted for the battle.

18. And when the expectations of the people was at the height, lo! a mighty storm arose, and the rain descended and beat upon the host! and the black dust was spoiled by the rain.

19. Then *George*, the chief captain of the host of the people of the provinces, decamped, and departed thence to a certain place, and the host of Britain followed after him.

20. And when *George* had gotten as far as the sign of the White-Horse, on the highway that leadeth to the chief city of the province, he drew up the host of the people of the provinces, and offered the men of Britain battle.

21. But *William* declined to go forth that day, and he turned and went to a certain place, † where the stores of the king, his master, were left: so the army of Britain went to secure the stores.

22. And it was [illegible], that the people of the provinces were in an [illegible]il case; for there were in the host a thousand men who went barefooted; for their shoes were worn and gone.

23. And the bowels of the chief captain yearn-

* The Warren Tavern.

† Reading.

ed towards the people, even as the bowels of a father for his son whom he loveth.

24. And after these things it came to pass, that the host of Columbia journeyed onwards to a place of safety; and the highways to the city were left unoccupied by the people of the provinces.

25. Now about this time, a company of the soldiers of the host of Britain, set out privately in the night, and came upon some of the people of the provinces while they were taking their rest in sleep;

26. And it was past the hour of midnight when they fell upon the people of the provinces; and they slew about three hundred men; and there fell of the men of Britain, about eight persons. Now, the sur-name of the captain of the men of Britain was *Grey.* * †

27. Now the princes of the provinces, even the great Sanhedrim, knowing of a certainty that the army of Britain were minded to get into the city, departed thence, lest peradventure they should fall into the hands of their enemies.

CHAP. XV.

General Howe marches into Philadelphia—The Battle of Germantown—The Delaware Frigate captured.

AND it was so, that the greater part of the host of the king of Britain, encamped in a town,

* General Grey.

† Paoli Massacre.

in the province of Pennsylvania, the name thereof was Germantown.

2. And *William*, the chief captain of the host, took his way to the chief city, and the residue of the host followed after him.

3. The city was founded by *Penn*, after the form of ancient Babylon; the streets therof were fair and comely to behold! her merchants lived like princes! and her honorable men were many in number!

4. The houses of the chief men of the city were lined with cedar, and the beams and rafters were of fir, for the cedar and the fir trees were in great abundance in the forests of Columbia; and here was no need to send to Tyre and Sidon for workmen to hew the timber, for the men of Columbia were well skilled in all such matters.

5. Now the merchants sent every year, great store of the boards of the cedar and of the fir tree to the countries afar off, and the merchants sold them at a certain price, and the wealth of other nations came into the land of Columbia as a flowing stream.

6. And it was so, that as *William*, the chief captain, entered into the city, many of the inhabitants came out to do him honor.

7. Now the great Sanhedrim had deputed *Benjamin* to go and make affinity with *Louis*, the king of Gaul, that he might send and help the people of the provinces against their mighty adversaries, the men of Britain.

8. For the king of Gaul and *George*, the king of Britain, were often at war with each other. And when *Benjamin* was told that *William* had taken the chief city of the provinces, he answered and said;

9. Say not ye in your hearts that *William* hath taken the city, but rather say that the city hath taken *William;* for is he not hemmed in by the host of the people of the provinces on one side, and by the waters of the river on the other side?

10. Now *Benjamin* appeared as though he regarded not these things; and it was so, that all the people heard him gladly, and he was highly esteemed in the kingdom of Gaul, and was called a philosopher, which by interpretation signifieth a lover of wisdom.

11. And it came to pass, after that *William*, the chief captain of the host of Britain, had gotten into the city, that *George*, the chief captain of the host of Columbia, drew nigh unto the men of Britain who were encamped at Germantown.

12. And *William* strengthened himself in the city, and placed the destroying engines on the banks of the river, lest, peradventure, the armed ships of Columbia should come and drive him from thence.

13. And it was so that while the servants of the king of Britain were doing these things, one of the armed ships of Columbia came against the town, and the name of the ship * was called after the name of the river.

14. And the destroying engines that were in the ship, discharged their thunders upon the town: but it came to pass, that when the tide went down, the ship ran upon the ground; and the mariners who were therein, seeing that all hope of escaping was gone, delivered themselves up to the men of Britain.

* Delaware Frigate.

15. And the ship became a prey to the servants of the king of Britain, and the mariners were made captives.

16. Now while the men of Britain were busied in the city, *George*, the chief captain of the host of the people of the provinces, called the chief men of the host together;

17. And when they had communed amongst themselves, the greatest part advised, that the host should move forwards and assault the men of Britain, who were encamped in the town.

18. Now the host of Columbia had been strengthened by the inhabitants from the province of Virginia, and from Peek's Hill; and the number of men who came to the help of their brethren, were two thousand and five hundred.

19. And when the chief captain had ordered the battle, the host moved forwards in several companies: and the sun was just risen upon the earth when the army of the people of the provinces assaulted the men of Britain.

20. And when the people of the provinces fell upon the men of Britain, who were on the borders of the town, they fled into the town, and the people of the provinces pursued after them.

21. And a certain captain of the army of Britain, whose sur-name was *Musgrove*, seeing that the servants of the king of Britain were fleeing before their enemies, he took about three hundred men, and entered into the strong house of *Benjamin* * (now the house was built up with hewn stone, and it was very strong.)

* Benjamin Chew, Esq.

22. And it was so, that the people of the provinces halted when they came to the house of *Benjamin*, and they warred with the servants of the king of Britain who were in the house.

23. Now while they were busied about these things, *Nathaniel* * assaulted the army of Britain on the right, and the battle waxed hot, and there were many who fell down slain that day!

24. And another captain whose name was *Matthews*, took captive of the host of Britain, three score and ten persons. Howbeit they were loosened from their captivity, and the manner of their enlargement was on this wise;

25. For lo! a great mist arose, and the sun was darkened, and the men appeared at a distance as trees walking; and *Matthews* wist not to which company he was captain: and it came to pass, that the army of Britain environed him round about, and all his company, and the men he had taken captives.

26. Now there were many valiant acts done that day: nevertheless the host of the people of the provinces fled before the servants of the king of Britain.

27. And *Cornwallis*, a lord, and a chief captain in the army of Britain, and several men with him, pursued after the people of the provinces, on swift horses.

28. Now the slain and wounded of the people of the provinces, and those who were taken captives, were about six hundred men: and there were slain, wounded and taken captive of the men of Britain, about five hundred persons.

29. And there were two captains of the army

* General Greene.

of Britain, slain; the name of the first captain was *Agnew*, and the name of the other was *Bird*.

30. And there was also slain a captain of the people of the provinces, whose sur-name was *Nash*, and his armor-bearer * fell with him.

CHAP. XXVI.

Operations against Fort Miffin, on Mud-Island—and Red-Bank — The former finally evacuated by the Americans.

NOW there was a strong hold that was built on an island in the river; it was occupied by the people of the provinces, and it was called after the name of *Thomas*, † one of the princes of the provinces.

2. There was also another strong hold ‡ about four furlongs from the former, and it was built on a portion of ground that appertained unto *James*, he was an honorable man, and he had several sons and daughters; and his sons were men of renown and beloved of the people; they dwelt in the province of Jersey, and the hold was nigh unto the river.

3. Now the people of the provinces had laid impediments in the way of the ships of the king of Britain, so that they could not get to the city; and the host of Britain were sore troubled because of these things.

* Aiddecamp Witherspoon.

† Fort Miffin, on Mud-Island.

‡ Red Bank.

4. And the victuals and all the implements for war that were wanted in the host, they brought in carriages to the city, and the charge thereof was great, and the arrival of the carriages uncertain.

5. Then the chief captain of the navy of Britain, and *William*, chief captain of the host of the king, cast in their minds how they should gain the strong hold that was on the island.

6. And they toiled hard for many days, and they shot into the hold, and the destroying engines beat down the buildings that were on the island; and the men who were therein were sore galled by the men of Britain and the destroying engines. Nevertheless, the garrison maintained their integrity.

7. And after many days watching, and sore conflicts, both from the water and also from the land, and when many valiant men were slain, the chief captain of the navy of the king of Britain, was told there was a way round the hinder part of the island where a ship might pass, so as to come nigh unto the hold.

8. And when the chief captain heard thereof, he lightened a ship, so that she should not draw much depth of water; and valiant men were put therein; and the ship moved along on the face of the water, and came against the hinder part of the hold.

9. And when the garrison saw the ship, and the armed men ready with the instruments of war, all hopes of resistance vanished; for their destroying engines were rendered useless, and the means of defence were destroyed.

10. Now it came to pass, when it was night, that the men who were in the hold, escaped to

the province of Jersey, to the strong hold that was built on the portion of ground that belonged to *James.*

11. And the captain who was over the men in the hold, gat great honor; his sur-name was *Smith;* moreover the great Sanhedrim gave him a sword of fine carved work, the work of the hand of the cunning workman!

12. Now there were several ships that were armed with the destroying engines, and they annoyed the navy of Britain, and the captain of the ships also gat great honor; his sur-name was *Hazlewood,* and he also received a sword.

13. Now the implements that were put into the river to keep the ships of the king from coming to the city, were strong and many;

14. They were made of the large fir-trees of Columbia, and they were put one upon another, and large pieces of barbed iron were fastened thereto; and when they were fashioned together, they were let down into the waters of the river.

15. And the machines with the barbed iron pointed towards the ships, and lo! when the ships came upon the points of the barbed iron, they were marred, and the waters of the river rushed into the ships, and they were filled with the waters of the river.

CHAP. XXVII.

Fort on Red Bank—The Hessians under Count Donop are defeated—Finally evacuated on the approach of Lord Cornwallis with a large force—Count Donop dies of his wounds.

AND when the servants of the king of Britain had gotten possession of the strong hold on the island, the ships of the king of Britain moved along upon the face of the water, and came to the city; and there was great rejoicing because of this thing.

2. And it came to pass, that after the hold was taken, and before the navy of the king of Britain had cast anchor before the city, that *William*, the captain of the host, sent a certain captain and two thousand men to take the strong hold in the province of Jersey, that was built on the portion of ground that appertained to the inheritance of *James*.

3. And the name of the captain whom he sent, was *Donop*, he was from the German country; and the men who went with him, were the soldiers who were hired of the German princes, and they went by the name of Hessians, in the land of Columbia.

4. And *Donop*, the captain, passed over the river, and the two thousand men followed after him, and they landed in the province of Jersey.

5. They took the highway that leadeth from the house of *William* the publican, to the field of *Haddon*; * and as they passed along the way, some of the men turned aside and went to the house of *Jacob*, that stood near the way side.

* Haddonfield.

6. Now *Peter* was dressing the fleece of *Jacob's* sheep, and *Gideon* was at the house of *Jacob*, and they were all taken captive: and it came to pass, that as *Gideon* drew nigh unto *Donop*, the captain, he smote *Gideon* with the staff that was in his hand, upon the head; but *Jacob* and *Peter* were not smitten.

7. Then the captain and the men journeyed forwards; and the sun was going down when they entered the field of *Haddon*, and they abode there that night.

8. And on the morning of the next day, about the time of the cock-crowing, the men of war departed from the field of *Haddon*, and passed along the highway through the province of Jersey, towards the strong hold. *

9. And as they came to the borders of *Joseph*, whose house stood by the way side, lo! *Joseph* came out to see the armed men; but he wist not that they were so nigh at hand.

10. And when he would fain have escaped and gone into his house, one of the armed men called to him in an unknown tongue; but he understood him not; and the man smote *Joseph* with a sword that he had in his hand, and the zeal of *Joseph* was kindled agaist the man.

11. Now when the men drew nigh unto the hold, *Donop*, the captain, sent a messenger to demand that it should be given up, and all that was therein;

12. But the captain in the strong hold, whose sur-name was *Greene*, † hearkened not to the

* Red Bank.

† Colonel Greene.

voice of *Donop*, the captain, but prepared himself to resist the enemy with all his might.

13. Then was the wrath of *Donop*, captain of the Hessians, kindled, against the people of the provinces, and he gave command that every man should be ready with his weapons of war in his hand;

14. And he rushed forwards as a horse into the battle, or as a bird to the snare of the fowler, and knew not that it was for his life; and his men followed after him.

15. Now there was a vacant place that had been occupied as a place of defence; and when the captain of the garrison knew of a certainty that the Hessians were coming against the hold, he left it for a station more inward.

16. And it was so, that when the Hessians had gotten into the vacant place, they shouted with a great shout, supposing their warfare was accomplished.

17. But lo! the men in the hold stood ready, every man with his weapon of war in his hand; and when the enemies of the people of the provinces, even the Hessians, came near unto the battlements, the destroying engines were let loose, and they cast out their thunders,

18. And the Hessians fell down slain in great multitudes; and *Donop*, the captain, was taken captive, and was sore wounded, and died of his wounds.

19. Now there were slain of the Hessians about four hundred persons, and the battle continued about half an hour, and the residue made their escape and fled.

20. Now the bellowings of the destroying engines were heard afar off, and the shouting of

the men of war, resounded from shore to shore, and from province to province!

21. The flocks and the herds were driven from the pastures! they sought the thick shade of the forest! the hair of their flesh stood up at the sound of the battle of the warriors!

22. The knees of the ancients smote together! the terrors of death encompassed them round about! they eat their bread in fear, and their drink was mingled with their tears!

23. And the captain in the hold gat great honor, and the princes of the provinces, even the great Sanhedrim, gave him a sword of curious workmanship.

24. So the strong hold remained in the hands of the people of the provinces: nevertheless, *Cornwallis* came with a great army not many days after, and when the garrison heard thereof, they destroyed the hold and departed.

CHAP. XXVIII.

The Hessians retreat through the Jerseys and plunder the Inhabitants.

NOW after that *Donop*, the captain, was slain, the residue of the host turned back again; and as they passed along through the province of Jersey, they spoiled the inhabitants thereof.

2. And every thing that was pleasant to the eye, they took away! they were like greedy dogs that never had enough! they spared not, neither did they pity!

3. Desolation and destruction marked the paths of their feet! and those who had fared delicately every day, were glad of a morsel of bread!

4. Nevertheless, they were gainers in the end, inasmuch as they learned more true wisdom in the hour of adversity, than had been known while they were basking in the sunshine of prosperity!

5. They were taught that the cup of felicity, without some mixture of the wormwood and the gall, was by no means a draught for mortal man!

6. Moreover their hearts expanded with benevolence towards the children of misfortune, they sought them out in their solitary cottages, they informed themselves of their varied wants, and with a liberal hand chased away the cause of their woe!

7. The blessings of the poor came upon them, and the tear of gratitude abundantly repaid their liberality! They moreover reaped the rich harvest of self-approving thoughts! and could say with propriety, I have not altogether lived in vain!

8. The golden wedge of Ophir, and the diamond of Golconda, lost for a time their magic influence! The pleasures of sensuality were absorbed in the boundless prospect of inestimable treasures! treasures of eternal duration!

9. But alas! when the day of peace returned, pleasure tempted them with her golden wings! she spread abroad her allurements, and many who had once seen the vanity of earthly riches, were caught in her snares, and lost sight of substantial felicity in the pursuit of shadows!

10. Let the children of poverty comfort them-

selves, inasmuch as they are removed far from the snares of the dissipated sons of voluptuousness, whose tents are surrounded by the harbingers of the king of terrors! who rideth on the pale horse! and whose name is death!

11. Harken, therefore ye children to the instruction of the aged, and let the hoary head teach you wisdom; like beacons on the shore of the sea, they point to the unwary traveller, and shew him the rocks and quicksands that abound in the turbulent ocean of life!

12. The counsel they give, is the fruit of experience. Do thou therefore regard it as the oracle of truth! they speak of what they have been, and are qualified by wisdom to steer thy bark with safety into the desired port!

13. In the morning of thy days, in the prime of thy life, when thou art released from the guardianship of thine elders, when thy father hath paid the great debt of nature, and his ashes are covered with the clods of the valley and thou art about to launch forth into the busy scenes of life,

14. Then is the hour of danger! then will that arch foe to man's happiness, whose name is self-sufficiency, endeavour to persuade thee that thou art wiser than the ancients, who have trodden the path before thee!

15. He will tell thee, thine own understanding is sufficient to conduct thee with safety to the ultimate end for which thou wast created!

16. But hearken thou not to his delusive words, for thousands have been led astray by his counsel!

17. Let wisdom have place in thine heart, let her have the direction of all thy actions;

and let caution take thee by the hand! then shalt thou be led with safety through all the apartments of human bliss on earth, and the hope of thine expectation shall not perish!

18. Thou shalt descend with fortitude the declivity of life! a pleasing serenity shall play around thine heart at that important moment when a new state of existence shall open before thee! then shall thine eyes behold with transport, the reward of thy virtue! stamped with the seal of eternal truth!

CHAP. XXIX.

The British and American Armies go into winter quarters—Sir Guy Carlton is succeeded by General Burgoyne—The Militia, under General Herkimer, fall into an ambuscade of Indians and Tories, led by Sir John Johnson and St. Leger, who were upon an expedition against Fort Schuyler.

NOW it came to pass, after the strong holds on the river were destroyed, and the ships of the king of Britain had cast anchor before the city, that the men of war went into their winter encampments.

2. The soldiers of the king of Britain occupied the houses in the city, they feared not the driving snow nor beating rain! inasmuch as they were clad in warm cloathing, that was made of the fleeces of sheep, which feed in fat pastures of the island of Albion!

3. But it was not so with the valiant men of Columbia, who fought the battles of the great

Sanhedrim! they were poorly clad, and many of them walked barefooted to the place * of their encampment; and the frozen earth was stained with the blood of the men of war!

4. Amongst the trees of the forest, they pitched their tents! † the fierce howlings of the winter storm chased away their repose! they were like unto a ship in a troubled sea! they were tossed in their minds as a leaf driven to and fro by contending currents!

5. Nevertheless, the spirit of opposition remained firm within them! the words of the great Sanhedrim were as a law written in their inward parts! they had tasted of the waters of strife, and the thoughts of submission were driven far away, even as the chaff is driven from the threshing floor of the husbandman!

6. But *William*, chief captain of the armies of Britain, fared sumptuously every day, he delighted himself with vain sports and shews! and was occupied in those things that were not seemly for a warrior! he loved pleasure, and became vain in his imaginations!

7. He lightly esteemed the glory of Britain! he seemed to account it as a thing of nought! yea, he caused his nation to be evil spoken of!

8. Even the sect of the tories, they despised him! he caused many of them to turn aside and walk in the footsteps of the great Sanhedrim!

9. Now it came to pass, while *William* was wasting the treasure of the king his master, in the pursuit of the vain imaginations of his own

* Valley Forge.

† Huts.

heart, that tidings came from the province of the North. *

10. Now *John*, a valiant man, from the island of Britain, was made chief captain over the men of war, in the room of *Guy*; howbeit *Guy* held his peace, and murmured not at the appointment of *John*.

11. And there was a strong hold † in the province, which was occupied by the servants of the great Sanhedrim, it was nigh unto a river, ‡ and *John* desired to have the hold for a place of defence.

12. And *John* sent two valiant men § against the hold to take it. And the barbarians of the wilderness, and some of the soldiers of Britain, and of the sect of the tories followed after the men whom *John* had sent: the name of the first was *Johnson*, and the name of the second *St. Leger*.

13. Now there were some of the people of the provinces gathered together, under *Herkimer*, a captain and servant to the great Sanhedrim, and the number of men who were thus gathered, were about eight hundred persons.

14. And when *Johnson* heard thereof, he went forth to lie in wait for the people. And about seven hundred barbarians and a number of the sect of the tories followed after him.

15. They hid themselves in the wilderness! they couched down as a lion, and as a young lion they watched for their prey! yea, they

* Canada.

† Fort Schuyler.

‡ Mohawk River.

§ Sir John Johnson and St. Leger.

thirsted for the blood of their enemies, even as the way-faring man thirsteth for the brooks of water, when he is faint with heat.

16. And the people who were with *Herkimer* journeyed forwards in the simplicity of their hearts, for they wist not that there were liers in wait!

17. And it came to pass, as they journeyed forwards, that the liers in wait arose out of their secret places, and fell upon the people who were with *Herkimer*, and slew seven score persons of the people of the provinces!

18. And there fell of the chief warriors of the barbarians, three score and ten men, who were well skilled in drawing the bow, and could shoot an arrow to an hair's breadth and not miss!

19. And the battle waxed hot, and *Herkimer*, the captain, was slain; and the widows and fatherless were multiplied in the land!

20. The strife of the warriors was cruel! they rushed upon each other as the streams from the mountains! their countenances were dark and gloomy as the clouds from the South in the heat of summer, when the earth is parched with heat!

21. So fierce * was their warfare, that the barbarians were astonished with fear! and jealousy took hold on their minds!

22. And they said to their young men, Lo! now we shall be cut off by these people—they are confederated together, notwithstanding their seeming animosity.

* The militia and tories were so closely engaged, that they stabbed each other with their knives.

23. And they commanded them to fall upon all the white people (for so they called the people of the provinces and the sect of the tories) and there were as many of the sect of the tories slain by the barbarians, as by the people of the provinces!

24. And *Johnson* seeing that the people were confused, and that there was a great discomfiture; he caused a retreat to be sounded, and every man went to his own tent.

CHAP. XXX.

St. Leger attempts to terrify the Garrison in Fort Schuyler (formerly Stanwix,) is unsuccessful—Col. Willet and Lieutenant Stockwel undertake to go to the Camp at Still-Water—General Schuyler sends a detachment under Arnold—The Indians retreat with precipitation (occasioned by a Stratagem of Arnold) and the British follow their example.

NOW *St. Leger*, the servant of the king of Britain and captain of the host, cast in his mind how he should get possession of the hold; and he thought to have terrified the men of war who were therein.

2. And he sent a herald * to the governor of the garrison, to demand possession thereof, in the name of the king his master. He exceedingly magnified his own strength, and thought to make the hearts of the men of war to melt!

3. Howbeit they stood firm in their love to

* A flag.

the great Sanhedrim, and hearkened not to the words of *St. Leger.*

4. Nevertheless the governor of the garrison, privately sent two * valiant men while it was yet night; who put their lives in their hands, and they went forth, and passed by the encampment of their enemies!

5. Now their way lay across the war path of the barbarians, whose frightful yellings were heard upon the tops of the mountains! and resounded in the forests! making the hearts of the husbandmen to quake for fear!

6. And the two men passed on, notwithstanding the dangers that were in the way! The phantoms of imagination pursued them! the fear of their enemies added wings to their feet!

7. The wild beast of the forest passed by! a rustling was heard among the trees! Ah! there they cried, is the son of the murderer! the sound of his feet is heard!

8. Again they hear the terrific yell! the hair of their flesh stood up! they made ready the instruments of death! they prepared to meet the dreadful foe!

9. The lamps † of midnight marked out a path for their feet—they journeyed forwards with fear! and the terrors of the night environed them round about!

10. They rejoiced at the dawning of the day! they had longed for it more than for hidden treasure! and when the sun arose, they were an hungred.

* Col. Willet and Lieutenant Stockwel.

† The stars.

11. A table * was spread for them in the wilderness! the fruit of the bramble sustained them! until they arrived in safety to the encampment of their brethren, beside Still-Water.†

12. Now *Philip* ‡ was chief captain of the men of war who were at Still-Water; and when he was told that the garrison in the hold were in a strait, he gathered together a band of men.

13. And *Benedict* offered to go before the men, and conduct them to the hold, and *Philip* rejoiced thereat; inasmuch as he knew that *Benedict* was a valiant man, who turned not his back in the day of battle.

14. And there was a notable prisoner § with *Philip*, and he was called a spy, (now a spy was accounted an abominable thing in those days, they were not suffered to live, but were hanged up before the host, even as a dog is hanged on a tree, and they know their place no more!)

15. And *Benedict* spake to the man, and said, lo! now thy life is forfeited, nevertheless if thou wilt go to the camp of our enemies and make them afraid, so that they flee before us; then thou wilt do well;

16. And thy life shall be given thee for a prey; thy possessions shall not be given to another, neither shall a stranger possess thine inheritance; but it shall be thine all the days of thy life, and thy children after thee! moreover the favor of the great Sanhedrim shall rest upon thee!

* They breakfasted on black berries.

† The proper name of the place.

‡ General Schuyler.

§ Jost Cuyler.

17. And it was so, that the messenger promised to do all that *Benedict* had bidden him. And he went forth towards the camp of the barbarians;

18. And when he came to the camp, he reported the words that had proceeded out of the mouth of *Benedict*. Moreover he told them, That the host of the people of the provinces was strong and mighty, even a very great multitude.

19. And while he was yet speaking, lo! one of their own tribe also came into the camp, and rehearsed unto them the same words.

20. And when the barbarians had heard the tidings; they were all discomfited, and they all arose as one man to flee away! for the fear of the host of Columbia, and the fear of *Benedict* had fallen upon them!

21. Now when *St. Leger* heard thereof, he was sore vexed; and he sought to persuade them to tarry with him; but he could not prevail, although he offered them of the strong water of Barbadoes to drink; well knowing they loved it even as their own souls!

22. Furthermore, they reproached him, inasmuch as he had told them that if they would follow after the host of Britain, they should not go forth to the battle, but should be at peace and burn the sweet scented plant * of the South country, and regale themselves with the perfumes thereof! Only with their eyes they should behold the rebellious sons of Columbia, fleeing before the host of Britain, even as the stricken hart fleeth before the hunters!

* Tobacco.

23. So the host fled, and left much spoil; and the people of the provinces gathered thereof in great abundance.

CHAP. XXXI.

General Burgoyne advances, sends a detachment to seize the stores at Bennington; they are repulsed with vigor, and a great part of the detachment cut off.

NOW it came to pass, in the seventeen hundred and seventy-seventh year of the great *Founder* of the Christian sect, that the armies of the North moved towards each other; even the army of Britain, under *John*, whose surname was *Burgoyne;* and the host of the people of the provinces, under *Horatio*, * a chief captain and servant to the great Sanhedrim.

2. Now when *Burgoyne* was told that there were large stores of corn and fine flour at Bennington, collected for the soldiers of the Columbian host, he purposed in his heart to deprive the people of the provinces thereof.

3. And he prepared an army of valiant men, that they might go forth and take possession of the stores; for verily he needed those things, even the corn and the fine flour, for he was in a strange land, and had not abundance of bread.

4. Howbeit he took counsel of a man whose sur-name was *Skine;* † he was a servant of the king, and an officer in the host of Britain: and he had possessions in that country.

* General Gates.

† Colonel Skine.

5. And the man, even *Skine*, spake after this manner, saying: Lo! now thou purposeth in thy heart, to send an army to seize the stores of the people of the provinces, that are collected together at Bennington.

6. Know thou of a truth, that my heart is not with thy heart in this thing, for verily thy servant knoweth, that the people who occupy the country round about, are true men; they love the king, and are zealous to observe the laws of the realm of Britain:

7. Send therefore only a small company of the young men of the host, and let them go forth, and let the banners of Britain, even the royal ensign of the king, go before them; and verily thou shalt behold the people gather to it, like the gathering of the congregation before the doors of the synagogue when alms are wont to be given.

8. And it was so, that *Burgoyne*, the chief captain, hearkened to the voice of *Skine*, and he sent a certain captain * with his company, who came from the German country, and five score of the Barbarians of the wilderness followed after them.

9. And another captain with his company also journeyed forwards, and these were commanded to encamp at Battenkill, that they might be ready to help the foremost company; and the captain's name was *Breyman*.

10. Now there were a captain nigh unto Bennington: he was a servant of the great Sanhe-

* Colonel Baum.

drim, and his name was *Stark*; * and there was with him a large number of the people of the provinces, who were come out to withstand the servants of the king.

11. And when the captain, even *Stark*, was told that a company was coming towards the stores, he sent forth a band of chosen men, and he appointed a valiant man whose sur-name was *Gregg*, to go before them.

12. And when they had journeyed a few furlongs, lo! they saw the Barbarians of the wilderness approaching, and a company of the German soldiers were in the rear of the Barbarians.

13. Then the people who were with *Gregg*, fled and reported the tidings to *Stark*, chief captain in that place.

14. And it was so, that the captain gathered his army together, and he led the people forth to the battle.

15. Now there were with him, three other captains, namely; *Warner*. *Williams*, and a man whose sur-name was *Brush*: these were valiant men, and went forth before the men of war.

16. And it came to pass, when they drew nigh to the servants of the king of Britain, they put the battle in array, army against army.

17. Now when the German captain, whose sur-name was *Baum*, saw that the people of the provinces were strong, and that the inhabitants of the land did not come forth to the help of the king, as *Skine* had said, he sent a messenger unto *Burgoyne*, the chief captain, and advertised him thereof:

* General Stark.

18. Then was the captain who was encamped at Battenkill, commanded to go forth with his company to the help of his brethren, and he did so.

19. And the chief captain, even *Burgoyne*, and all the people who were with him, journeyed along the borders of the river, * and they encamped nigh unto the plains of Saratoga.

20. Now it came to pass, that the people of the provinces who followed after *Stark*, fell upon the company who were with the German captain, and environed them round about; and the Barbarians were smitten with fear and fled: nevertheless three of their chief warriors were slain.

21. And it was about the third hour in the afternoon, when the people of the provinces rushed in upon their enemies; and the breaking in of the men of war, was like the breaking in of the waters upon the pastures of the husbandmen, when the rivers are swelled by the vehement driven of the east wind!

22. And the battle lasted about the space of two hours, and the noise of the destroying engines was like the continued rumbling of thunder in the midst of summer!

23. And it was so, that while the people of the provinces were gathering the spoil of their enemies, lo! the company from Battenkill were nigh at hand, about sixteen furlongs off.

24. Then were the people of the Provinces strengthened by another company, † and they moved towards their enemies, as to a certain

* Hudson River.

† Col. Warner's Continental Regiment.

victory; and they met the servants of the king; who were taken in an evil net, and three hundred of them were slain, and seven hundred were taken captive.

25. Now when the princes of the Provinces, even the great Sanhedrim, heard of these things, they rejoiced thereat; and they made a decree that the man, even *Stark*, should be made a chief captain * in the host of Columbia.

CHAP. XXXII.

The British army encamp on the heights and plains of Saratoga; and the American army at the Still-Water—a smart engagement ensues, wherein the Americans are successful. General Clinton makes a diversion to relieve Burgoyne, and attacks Fort Montgomery.

NOW when tidings came to *Burgoyne*, the chief captain of the host of Britain, how that the servants of the king were slain and taken captive at Bennington, he was sore troubled; inasmuch as the fame thereof would damp the ardour of the warriors of Britain.

2. Nevertheless he pitched his camp nigh unto the host of Columbia, even on the plains and high-lands of Saratoga; and the people of the Provinces were encamped at the Still-water: and the space between the two armies was about sixteen furlongs.

3. And it was so, that as some of the young men of the army of Britain went forth to view

* Brigadier General.

the camp of their enemies, they were met by some of the people who followed after *Horatio*, and they strove with each other in the way.

4. And when the chief captains, *Burgoyne* and *Horatio*, heard the noise of the men of war, they put the battle in array, army against army:

5. And when it was mid-day, the battle waxed hot: death invaded all ranks, and many valiant men were slain; and the strife of the warriors continued until the going down of the sun:

6. And there were slain, wounded, and taken captive of the men of Britain, about five hundred persons; and there fell of the people of the Provinces, three-score and four valiant men, who turned not their backs in the day of battle!

7. Now the Barbarians who were yet remaining with *Burgoyne*, the chief captain, when they beheld the valiant acts of the people of the Provinces, they refused to help the men of Britain, but went over to the host of Columbia; and served the king of Britain no more.

8. And the names of the tribes who went over to the host of Columbia, were the Oneidas, the Tuscaroras, the Onondagas, and the Mohawks.

9. Now *Horatio*, was occupied in strengthening the camp of the people of the Provinces round about; and there came to the help of *Horatio*, *Lincoln*, a valiant man, and two thousand men with him, prepared with instruments for war.

10. And it was so, that when tidings came to *Henry*, whose sur-name was *Clinton*, (he was chief captain of the king's forces in the city of New-York,) how that the people of the Pro-

vinces pressed hard upon the host of the king in the Northern province;

11. And fearing lest *Burgoyne* should be discomfited, and the men who were with him, he privately sent a messenger with a written letter, thereby informing him that he purposed at a convenient time, to fall upon a strong hold, * occupied by the great Sanhedrim.

12. For *Henry* thought to have diverted *Horatio* from his purpose, and that he would certainly come and save the hold; but *Horatio* was in one mind, and was not to be turned.

13. Now when *John*, whose sur-name was *Burgoyne*, had received the written letter, he was refreshed and his spirit revived.

14. Then he sent two valiant men who disguised themselves in shepherd's apparel, and he spake to them nearly on this wise, "Go ye now "to the city of York, and tell *Henry*, the chief "captain, concerning all things relating to the "war, and that there is provender for the host "until such a day, and that the host will abide "here, in this place, until then."

15. And it was so, that the men went forth from the camp, and journeyed through the wilderness, and escaped the perils that were in the way; and they went into the city and reported all the words of *John*, in the ears of *Henry*, whose sur-name was *Clinton*.

16. Not many days after, there came more soldiers from the island of Britain, and the number of them, was about two thousand fighting men; and *Robertson*, a chief captain and renowned in war, came with the soldiers.

* Fort Montgomery.

17. And when the soldiers were landed from the ships, and had refreshed themselves; it came to pass at a convenient season, that *Henry* numbered the men of war, and led them forth to battle.

18. And they came against the hold * that was called by the name of the chief captain, who was slain by *Guy*, the king's governor.

19. And they besieged the hold round about; and *Henry* sent a messenger to the governor of the garrison, and demanded of him to deliver up the hold and all that was therein.

20. Howbeit, the governor refused to obey the summons, and strengthened himself against the men of Britain.

21. Nevertheless, the army of Britain rushed forwards, they bore down all opposition; they ascended the battlements of the enemy; they brake into their defenced places! Howbeit, the governor and his brother, and two hundred men escaped, and fled to the mountains; and the noise of the battle of the warriors was as the sound of many waters.

22. And the slain and wounded of the men of Britain, were about three hundred persons.

23. Then the people of the Provinces, seeing that the army of Britain was strong, and that they could not stand before their enemies, they burned another hold, that was in the vicinity of the former; and two of the armed ships of Columbia, lest they should fall into the power of the enemy.

24. And about the same time, *Tryon*, who was one of the king's governors, lift up his

* Fort Montgomery.

band against the people of the Provinces; and to shew a zeal for the king, he burned a town * with fire, and all that was therein.

CHAP. XXXIII.

The British army distressed and nearly surrounded—their provision begins to grow scarce—endeavour to extricate themselves, but are repulsed with considerable loss. Intrepidity of General Arnold. General Frazier slain.

NOW after *Burgoyne*, the chief captain, had waited until the appointed time, and no help appeared, when provisions for the host began to fail; then he drew forth about fifteen hundred chosen men, and went to view the host of the people of the Provinces.

2. And he hoped to have found out a way, whereby he might deliver himself from the danger that surrounded him: and two chief captains were with him, namely, *Phillips* and *Reidesel*.

3. And as they were going towards the host of Columbia, lo! they were met in the way by some of the servants of the great Sanhedrim.

4. And there were with the servants of the king who went out to view the host, some of the destroying engines, that were made of brass, and the balls that issued out of their mouths, weighed five hundred and seventy-six shekels, after the shekel of the sanctuary; and many of

* Continental Village.

the sons of men were felled to the earth therewith!

5. And when the servants of the great Sanhedrim appeared, lo! the brazen engines uttered their thunders, and the people were fain to shelter themselves behind the trees of the forest, which were a sure defence against the balls that were shot from the brazen engines.

6. Nevertheless when the people of the Provinces had taken courage, they rushed forth upon the tall men * of Britain, but they could not prevail, because they were as a wall of brass and united together, and were like to a three folded chord, not easily broken.

7. And the battle waxed hot, and the greater part of the host of Britain, and the army of the people of the Provinces were engaged in fierce war.

8. And *Benedict* distinguished himself that day, and gat great honor; inasmuch as he brake through the host of Britain, and entered into their places of defence, and drave them before him as sheep are driven from one pasture to another.

9. And it was so, that while the men of war were striving for the victory, that a large company of the German soldiers fled, and returned not again to the battle; and the men of Britain imputed the loss of the battle to them. †

10. And the host of Britain returned into the camp, and *Burgoyne*, the chief captain, was sorely troubled; the perturbation of his thoughts were like a troubled sea: moreover the famine

* Grenadiers.

† Capt. Moony, in the House of Commons.

prevailed in the camp, and the people whom he had despised, were stronger than he.

11. Furthermore, the balls from the destroying engines were shot into his camp; they came from the North and from the South, from the East and from the West; for the people of the Provinces occupied all the avenues that led to the camp, and there was no way to escape.

12. And while the chief captain was ruminating upon these things with *Phillips* and *Reidesel* by his side, chief captains and his companions in the war; lo! the dead body of his friend, with whom he used to take sweet counsel, whose sur-name was *Frazier*, was borne upon the shoulders of the servants of his household:

13. They were carrying him to the high place, called in the language of the men of Britain, the Great Redoubt, the burying-place he had chosen for himself.

14. Now he had desired that the usual ceremonies of the dead should be omitted, and that he might be privately buried by his own servants; nevertheless, the three captains, *Burgoyne*, *Phillips* and *Reidesel*, struck with sorrow and indignation at the mournful and humiliating scene, and feeling their affections kindled, they could not refrain from paying the last office of love to their deceased brother.

15. They followed the bier until they came to the burying-place, and lo! while the obsequies were performing, and the preacher was executing his office, and the people were attending upon this solemn occasion, they were shot at by the servants of the great Sanhedrim!

16. The balls from the destroying engines

raised clouds of dust that covered the priest and the people; nevertheless the preacher altered not his voice, neither did his countenance change, during the terrific and aweful scene!

17. The love of live was absorbed by the ardent affection that was felt for the departed warrior; they made an end of the sad solemnity, and the shade of the evening advanced and hid them from their enemies: but had *Horatio* known the occasion of the people's gathering together, they might have buried their dead in peace.

18. Now *James*, * armour-bearer to *Burgoyne*, the chief captain, and *Breyman*, a German captain, were slain; and *Williams* and *Ackland*, two valiant men, were taken captive; and about two hundred of the soldiers of Britain; and the people of the Provinces got great store of warlike spoil.

CHAP. XXXIV.

The army commanded by General Burgoyne, after several fruitless endeavors to escape, finally capitulate.

AND it was so, that the host of Britain were in an evil case; their sorrows were multiplied; the famine raged in the camp, and there was no way to escape; and their enemies environed them round about.

2. For lo! when they assayed to go back again, there were the armed men of Columbia in

* Sir James Clark.

the way; and when they attempted to pass over the river, their enemies were on the other side thereof:

3. And if they abode in the camp, they were cut off by the balls of the destroying engines, and there was no remedy!

4. Then the chief captain, even *Burgoyne*, was fain to call the principal men of the host together, that they might counsel him what to do, and advise together touching all things relating to the war.

5. And as the counsel were deliberating together, a ball from the destroying engines passed over the table, and they were astonished; and the fire of the warriors, even the haughty spirit of man was quenched.

6. Then they hastily concluded that the chief captain should send a deputation to *Horatio*, chief captain of the host of Columbia, and that he should send proposals of peace.

7. And it came to pass, that the chief captain sent a messenger to *Horatio*, and the messenger was instructed to obtain an answer from *Horatio*, that would accord with the desire of the counsel.

8. Now when *Horatio* was told that a messenger was coming from the host of Britain, and that the ensign * of peace was carried before him, he ordered the men of war to bring him into his presence:

9. And he entreated him kindly, and he sent an answer of peace to *Burgoyne*, the chief captain, and he sent certain proposals; and the scribe of the host wrote the proposals on paper,

* Flag.

and *Horatio* sealed the paper with his own signet; and the messenger departed.

10. And when *John* had opened the written paper, and had read the conditions, his anger was kindled; inasmuch as *Horatio* had demanded, that the soldiers of Britain should lay down their instruments of war, in their encampment, and become captives to the people of the Provinces.

11. Then the chief captain of the host of Britain, sent another messenger to *Horatio* with an epistle; and it was written therein, "Sooner "than this army will do as thou hast desired, "they will rush into the midst of their ene-"mies, determined to take no quarter."

12. Howbeit, after a certain time, *Horatio* agreed to the terms proposed by *Burgoyne*, the chief captain; for he was not careful to exact the uttermost, or wound too deeply the feelings of the unfortunate; neither was it a light matter to captivate an army of Britons, for such a thing had not been heard of, since the years of many generations.

13. And the writings were signed, and the signets of the two chief captains were prefixed thereunto, in the seventeen hundred and seventy-seventh year of the Christian Hegira, in the tenth month, and on the thirteenth day of the month, were they executed.

14. And there were taken first and last, of the army of Britain, according to the written record of *Ramsay* the scribe, ten thousand men; and large stores of all kinds of implements for war!

15. Thus the army of Britain, became captives to the people of the Provinces.

16. O Britain, how is thy glory tarnished! thy warriors are become weak! they are enervated! they have lost that noble fire that animated their fore-fathers! my soul is troubled for thy degenerate sons, whose progenitors trod upon the necks of their enemies, and had to sheath their swords for lack of opposition!

17. Bear witness ye *Henrys*, and ye *Edwards*, when ye led forth the hardy sons of Britain, against the embattled host; when one of her sons was an overmatch for thrice the number of the furious Gauls;* or call to mind, O Albion! the reign of thy virgin-queen, *Eliza*; who stood alone, and was prosperous in all her wars!

18. When thy navy, arrayed in terrific splendor, moved sublimely upon the face of the great deep, and surrounding nations trembled at thy power!

19. What a humiliating contrast is here! thy sons are now taken captive by a people unused to war; whose occupation is husbandry, and whose greatest skill is in the use of the plow, the hoe, and the mattock.

20. Is not the wickedness that aboundeth in thy borders, the cause of thy misfortunes? for vice and luxury weaken the people, and the rulers causeth them to err.

21. Thus ended the warfare of the northern army, and *Horatio* and *Benedict* gat great honor; and an account of their valiant acts, were recorded in the books of the great Sanhedrim.

* See Rap. Hist. Eng. bat. of Agencourt and Cresby.

CHAP. XXXV.

Sir William Howe prepares to embark for England; is succeeded in command by Sir Henry Clinton.

NOW the time drew nigh, when *William*, chief captain of all the armies of the king, in the land of Columbia, was to resign his captainship to another; and depart to the island of Britain, to give an account of his warfare to *George*, the king; and to the great Council of the kingdom.

2. And the captains of the host assembled themselves together, and prepared a great feast; and spent the night in vain sports and shows, in honor to the chief captain.

3. They made various representations, marvellous to behold; they were the inventions of cunning men: and fame, the goddess of the heathens, was perfigured, holding a trumpet to her mouth, blowing out in letters of light, the praises of their chief captain, in these words, "Thy laurels shall never fade."

4. Now these men were like the prophets of Ahab, who always prophesied good unto the king; who spake deceit, and flattery proceeded out of their mouths.

5. If it was not even so, then let the nations judge; for the laurel is a symbol of victory; and what marvellous act can be ascribed to *William*, the chief captain.

6. Now I would willingly expostulate with thee, O *William!* the opening of my lips, shall be of right things; my tongue shall speak the truth, for a lye is an abominable thing; yea,

it is a detestable thing: suffer me therefore to speak, for I wish to justify thee.

7. True it is, thou sailed from the island of Britain, to the town of Boston; from thence thou passed to Halifax; from Halifax, thou came to Long-Island; from thence, thou sailed to the city of York; and lastly, thou came to the city of Philadelphia.

8. And when thou had sojourned in that city, for a season, living in the gratification of they sensual appetites; lo! thou sailed to the Island of Britain; and left *Henry*, to war with the people of the Provinces, who were as able to go forth to the battle, as when thou first came amongst them.

9. This is the sum of thy victories, and the honor thou hast acquired thereby, no man will wish to take away from thee.

10. Hadst thou stayed in the Island of Britain, happy would it have been for thy fame, and the page of the historian would not have been sullied, with those excesses that were committed during the exercise of thy power, and which thou shouldst have prevented.

11. Now *William*, before his departure from the land of Columbia, sent some of the armed ships to destroy certain vessels that belonged to the people of the Provinces, that had fled up the river.

12. And the armed ships moved along upon the face of the water, and they passed by the city of Burlington that ancient city!

13. It was built upon the borders of the river, even the great river Delaware, and *James*, *

* James Kinsey, Esq. member of Congress.

one of the princes of the Provinces, dwelt in the city: he was a notable counsellor, and expounded the law to the people.

14. The inhabitants of the city were kindly affectionate to each other, the way-faring man partook of their bounty, and they suffered not the stranger to perish in their streets;

15. So that it became a proverbial saying in the land of Columbia, nearly on this wise: Lo! the inhabitants of Burlington are given to hospitality.

16. The scribe who recordeth these things, is a living witness to the truth thereof, and his record is true; for he was a stranger from a far country in the days of his youth:

17. And he came to the city of Burlington, and the inhabitants thereof entreated him kindly; and *John*, who was by occupation a tanner, took him into his house, and he sojourned with him many days.

18. Now this *John* was one of the elders of the city, and an honourable man; he had many sons and daughters.

19. But alas! many of the elders are removed, and know their places no more; their habitations are filled with strangers, and those who knew them not, occupy their pleasant places.

20. Now perhaps some will say, Why doth the scribe tell us of these things? or, What is it to us, if all the inhabitants of that city are given to hospitality?

21. Be not offended, O ye simple ones! neither let envy take hold on your minds: it is the tribute of gratitude, and without gratitude,

What is man? is he not worse than a brute? and the envious man is no better than he.

22. For envy biteth like the rattlesnake that lieth concealed in the forest, and their poison is alike fatal; the one destroyeth the body, and the other the noble virtues, that dignify and adorn the sons of men.

23. Such are the fruits of envy! it feedeth on the wormwood and the gall, and nothing is pleasant to the taste; shun therefore the least appearance thereof, lest it deprive thee of the pleasant flowers that yet remain in the garden of life, to cheer the heart of man in his passage through a thorny wilderness, replete with numberless dangers and consuming woe.

24. And it came to pass, that the armed ships arrived where the vessels were anchored, that belonged to the people of the Provinces, even at Bordentown in the province of Jersey; and the mariners burned the store-houses and the vessels, and afterwards they returned to Philadelphia, the great city!

25. Now certain sons of Belial from the province of Jersey, went into the city, and told *William*, the chief captain, that the people of the province of Jersey, were gathered together under *Joseph* * at the field of Haddon.

26. And that they were a lett to the husbandmen, inasmuch as they would not suffer the fruits of the field to come to the city.

27. And *William* was wrath, when he heard thereof; and he sent hastily for *Abercrombie*, and said unto him, Go now, and take the young men † whom thou leadest forth to the war, and

* Col. Ellis.

† Light Infantry.

go to the field of Haddon, and slay those men who dare to rise up against the king, and oppose his servants.

2°. So will the husbandmen rejoice; and we will buy of them the fruits of the field, our gold and our silver will allure them to the city, for verily, they are weary of the money made by the great Sanhedrim, which is no better than filthy rags.

CHAP. XXXVI.

The Light Infantry land in the night, near Gloucester, on the Jersey shore, and proceed to Haddonfield. The militia, commanded by Colonel Ellis, have notice of their coming—they narrowly escape.

THEN *Abercrombie* gathered his young men together, and they were put into the boats that waited for them; and they rowed down the river, about twenty-four furlongs from the city; and landed in the province of Jersey, nigh unto the town of Gloucester; the place where *Joseph* dwelt.

2. And it was in the first watch of the night, when they landed; and they passed along the high-way, that leadeth from the town of Gloucester to the field of Haddon.

3. The sound of their feet was not heard, as they journeyed along the way; for they had devised in their hearts, to surprise the men who were with *Joseph*, in their sleep.

4. Howbeit, a young man of the province of Jersey, espied them; and he hastened and told

Joseph, that mischief was intended against him, and the people who were with him.

5. And *Joseph* called a council, and he communed with the chief men who were about him; and they all with one voice, thought it most expedient to depart thence, for they knew not the strength of the enemy.

6. And it was so, that when the people of the province of Jersey, who followed after *Joseph*, had gotten to the one end of the field of Haddon; that *Abercrombie*, and his company, were at the other end thereof.

7. And *Abercrombie* divided his company into two bands; one band took their way straight to the town; and the other company took a circuit, and came round by the house of *Samuel*, * on Mount-Pleasant.

8. And the two bands entered the town, that was built on the field of Haddon; and they brake the doors and windows, and terrified the inhabitants thereof.

9. They had drank of the strong waters of Barbadoes, mixed with the black dust, and it made them furious; they made a hideous noise! they foamed at the mouth like the wild boars of the forest, when they are chased by the hunters! they were enraged because *Joseph* and his men had escaped.

10. The cries of the women and children were heard afar off! the glittering of the instruments of war, added to their terror; they despaired of seeing the dawning of another day!

11. Nevertheless, they were saved; and it was a deliverance that should not be forgotten. And

* Samuel Clement, Esq.

when the sun arose, the soldiers departed; and came to the house of *Samuel*, * that stood by the side of the river, opposite to the city; and the boats came to the shore and took them all in.

12. And they took captive, *William*, whose sur-name was *Ellis*; he was a useful man, and skilled in architecture; and a small number of the people of the province of Jersey, who were with him, were also taken captive.

13. These were some of the last acts of *William*, the chief captain: and it was so, that he went into one of the tall ships of the king of Britain, and the people of the provinces saw him no more: and *Henry*, whose sur-name was *Clinton*, was made chief captain in his stead.

CHAP. XXXVII

The news of the army under General Burgoyne, arrives in England; in consequence of which, the French Court acknowledge the Independence of the United States; and Dr. Franklin, Silas Deane, and Arthur Lee, Esqrs. are treated with, as Commissioners. Lord North's conciliatory bill passes both houses of Parliament; is sent to America, and rejected by Congress.

AND it came to pass, when tidings came to the king of Britain, and to the great Council of the kingdom; how that the Northern army was made captive by the people of the Provinces; their spirits sunk within them; astonishment seized the enemies of Columbia, they looked upon one another, and wist not what to say!

* Cooper's Ferry.

2. The wisdom of the wise, was sealed up as in a bag; the eloquent orator, was like to a bottle filled with new wine, and had no vent; their visages were marred, and covered with wrinkles, and fierce wrath flushed from their eye-balls.

3. The tables were turned upon them, their joy departed like a mist that hovereth on the top of the mountains, before the sun ariseth!

4. And hope, the last support of the wretched, the all-cheering companion of the child of woe, spread her downy pinions, scared at the frightful appearance of that monster, known amongst the sons and daughters of disobedience, whose name is *despair*, the hideous offspring of guilt.

5. Far otherwise, were the tidings received in the kingdom of Gaul; * there was great rejoicing in the land; and the joy of the people, exceeded the joy of the vine-dressers, when the presses burst out with new wine.

6. And the king spake, and said to his nobles, and his counsellors: "Lo now *Benjamin*, *Silas*, "and *Arthur*, † who were sent by the great "Sanhedrim, from the land of Columbia, are "yet in our realm, and we have not attended "to their mission.

7. "And now behold, the people of the Pro-"vinces, have taken captive the Northern ar-"my; and it plainly appeareth unto us, that "they are able to do their own work; never-"theless, lest we offend them, and to prevent "the breach from being made up between the "king of Britain, and the people of the Pro-

* France, anciently so called.

† Dr. Franklin, Deane, and Lee, Esqrs.

"vinces, we think it expedient that the men be "called into our presence.

8. "And that we make a lasting covenant "with these people, and that we bind them to "us in bands that cannot be broken; so will "our ancient enemies, the men of Britain, be "weakened, and their haughty spirits be hum-"bled."

9. And the sayings of the king pleased the people; and *Benjamin*, *Silas*, and *Arthur*, were forthwith brought into the presence of the king, and they did obeisance; and the king entreated them kindly, and they partook of his royal favor; and he made a covenant of peace with them, that was to continue to the end of many generations; and the covenant was signed, and the decree made known, on the sixth day of the eight month, in the seventeen hundred seventy and eighth year of the Christian Hegira.

10. But it came to pass, that when *George*, the king, heard thereof, he was very wroth, and he made war upon the king of Gaul for this thing; because he had taken part with the people of the Provinces.

11. Now the chief counsellor of the realm of Britain, determined to try soft words; seeing that the people of the Provinces, regarded not threatening speeches: but alas! it was too late, their confidence in the king and his chief servants, was destroyed.

12. Howbeit, he brought certain written proposals into the great council, that seemed to speak peace and good-will to the people of the Provinces, and the great council approved thereof; and they were sealed with the great signet of the realm, and sent to the land of Columbia.

13. And certain men were appointed to carry the proposals, who were called *Commissioners*; who, when they arrived on the coast of Columbia, they sent the proposals to the great Sanhedrim.

14. And it was so, that when the princes of the Provinces, had read all that was contained in the written paper, and had consulted together, it was rejected by the whole assembly; for they cared not to put their trust in the king of Britain any more.

15. And the commissioners seeing they were lightly esteemed by the great Sanhedrim, and their mission set at nought.

16. Then they denounced vengeance against the inhabitants of the land; they put forth a decree in their wrath, and menaced destruction, in their hot displeasure.

17. Furthermore, they spake and said, "Lo! "the people of the Provinces have made affinity "with *Louis*, king of Gaul, and have rejected "*George*, from being king over them; we will "therefore make their country desolate, and "lay waste their cities."

18. Nevertheless, the princes of the Provinces, even the great Sanhedrim, were not moved to fear; well knowing that they had counted the cost, and were prepared to bear the portion of evil they could not prevent.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

The French equip a fleet, for the purpose of blocking up the English in the Delaware. Sir Henry Clinton, being timely informed of their intentions, escapes to New-York; the land-forces march through the Jerseys. Battle of Monmouth.

AND it came to pass, after that the king of Gaul had made a covenant with *Benjamin*, *Silas*, and *Arthur*:

2. That he commanded his sea-captains, to make ready a navy of ships; and take large store of the destroying engines, and other implements for war; and that they should make all speed, to sail for the land of Columbia, and help the people of the Provinces, against their mighty adversaries, the men of Britain.

3. Then the sea-captains did according to all that the king commanded them; and they made ready the ships, and the mariners spread their sails to the wind, and hastily departed; because the king's command was urgent.

4. Now the servants of the king of Gaul, hoped to have arrived on the coast of Columbia, before the ships of the king of Britain should escape out of the great river Delaware; and if it had been so, verily the ships and the host of Britain, would have been in great jeopardy.

5. Howbeit, *Henry*, chief captain of the host of Britain, was told that the king of Gaul was meditating mischief against him; moreover, he was commanded by the king of Britain to depart from Philadelphia, the chief city of the Provinces; lest peradventure, the servants of the

king of Gaul, should come upon them unawares.

6. Then *Henry*, chief captain of the host of Britain, privately commanded the chief men of the host to have all things in readiness, to be gone on a certain day; but inasmuch as he desired to keep the thing from being known to *George*, the chief captain, he kept the labourers at their work, as though he inclined to keep the city.

7. And it came to pass, in the sixth month, on the eighteenth day of the month, and in the second year * after the people of the Provinces had thrown off the yoke of *George* the king; that the host of Britain departed out of the city.

8. And the ships also moved down the river; and the sect of the tories were astonished out of measure: inasmuch as they had hoped that their habitations in the city, and all their stuff would have been preserved, and the city possessed by the men of Britain, until *George*, the king, should reign and rule as in days past.

9. And the host of Britain passed over the river into the province of Jersey, and they journeyed onwards to the field of Haddon, and they encamped there that night.

10. And *George*, chief captain of the armies of Columbia, and all the armed men came to Princeton, in the province of Jersey, and there they pitched their tents.

11. And *George* queried with the chief men of the host, saying, Shall we go forth and offer the men of Britain battle, or shall we forbear.

12. And the men, even the captains of the

* Second year after the declaration of Independence.

host, answered and said, Not so: nevertheless let some of the people go forth and observe the enemy and fall upon the hinder part of the host.

13. And it was so, that *Scott*, * a chief captain, and a valiant man, and about one thousand men of the host, went forth to view the army of Britain, that was spread over the province of Jersey, even as the grasshoppers in the vale for abundance.

14. Now the men of Britain journeyed towards the sea coast, and they came to the town of Allen. †

15. And when *George*, the chief captain, heard thereof, he sent a valiant man, whose sur-name was *Wayne*, he was also a chief captain; and *Robert*, who was of the order of the priesthood, and who had received his ordination from the bishop of the city of Lud, expounded the law of *Moses* to the people; this man, even *Robert*, journeyed with them and became their minister; he was no Pharisee, neither was he the son of a Pharisee, but the spirit of charity rested upon him.

16. And *Fayette*, the nobleman from the kingdom of Gaul, was also with them, and he commanded the foremost company.

17. Now *Lee*, who had revolted from the king of Britain, and who had joined himself to the people of the Provinces, had been newly released from his captivity, for the men of Britain had taken him captive; as it is written in the nineteenth chapter of the Columbian Chronicle.

18. This man had been appointed to com-

* General Scott.

† Allen's-Town.

mand, and to lead the people forth against the host of Britain, but inasmuch as he was not like minded with *George*, the chief captain, he inclined not to go forth.

19. But it came to pass, when he saw that the people looked not towards him as in days past, he changed his mind and went out before the people.

20. And on the morning of the next day, he was commanded to assault the enemy, and give them battle.

21. And when *Henry*, chief captain of the host of Britain, was told that the people of the Provinces were coming towards him, he sent the stores, the baggage, and all the stuff that appertained to the host, away; and *Kniphausen*, chief captain of the German soldiers, had charge thereof.

22. Now *Henry* was troubled when he saw the people of the Provinces, inasmuch as he was persuaded they designed to seize the stores.

23. Therefore, he led forth the choice men of Britain, and fearing that there would be a sore conflict, he sent for a large number of the soldiers that were with *Kniphausen*, the German captain, beside a company of horsemen, to strengthen his host.

24. Then he led forth the men of war, and they moved towards the people of the Provinces, who followed after *Lee*.

25. And it came to pass, when *Lee* saw into the design of the men of Britain, he sent a messenger to *Scott*, who had under him a large number of valiant men; and the words he put into the messenger's mouth, were nearly on this wise, saying:

26. When thou comest to *Scott*, say thou unto him: thus saith *Lee* the captain, Tarry thou in yonder wood until I send thee word.

27. And the messenger departed; howbeit, *Scott* perceiving that part of the host were in motion, and not knowing the cause thereof, he thought it expedient to remove; and *Maxwell*, a valiant man, and a chief officer in the host, followed after him; and the host of the people of the Provinces were confused.

28. And the men of Britain pursued after them, until they came to a town in the province of Jersey, and there the people halted to refresh themselves, for they were weary and faint with heat.

29. And the chief captain, *George*, queried with *Lee* concerning the battle: now this *Lee* was a man of a haughty spirit, and he was offended at the words that proceeded out of the mouth of *George*, and he spake unadvisedly with his lips.

30. But it was so, that after the men of war, even the host of the people of the Provinces, were refreshed, they took courage and assaulted the men of Britain.

31. And when the battle waxed hot, *George* sent two captains * with their companies, on the right and on the left of the host of Britain.

32. But it came to pass, before they could get to the appointed place, the night approached, and the people betook themselves to rest.

33. And *George*, the chief captain, wrapped his cloak about him, and reposed himself under

* Generals Poor, and Woodford.

a tree; and the warriors of the great Sanhedrim lay on the ground, round about him.

34. Now there were slain and taken captive of the men of Britain, three hundred two score and ten persons, and two score and nineteen were found dead on the field of battle, on whose bodies were no wounds, but they perished with the heat; for it was in the midst of summer.

35. And *Monckton*, a valiant man of the host of Britain, fell in the battle; and the host mourned for him with a great mourning; inasmuch as he was prudent in all matters relating to the war, and one of the chief warriors.

36. And there were slain and wounded of the people of the Provinces, about two hundred two score and ten persons.

37. Now it came to pass, while it was yet night, that the host of Britain departed, and stole away like men ashamed, and the people of the Provinces knew it not; and the host came to a certain place called Sandy-Hook, which is nigh unto the sea-coast, and *George* pursued them not, for the people were very weary.

38. Now as the host of Britain were passing through the province of Jersey, there fell away from the host first and last, about eight hundred of the German soldiers.

39. Then after these things, *Henry* went over to the city of York, and all the people followed after him.

40. And the people rejoiced, inasmuch as they had escaped from the host of Columbia, for they had learned to fear; neither did they deride the servants of the great Sanhedrim as at the beginning.

CHAP. XXXIX.

The French fleet arrive at the Delaware, and pursue the British fleet. Their design frustrated—disabled by a storm—rendezvous at Boston. Action on Rhode Island.

AND it was so, that when the king of Gaul had fitted out a fleet of ships, he sent them to the land of Columbia to help the people of the Provinces, and to fight with the ships of the king of Britain.

2. But it came to pass, that the navy of the king of Britain escaped out of the river, even the great river Delaware, a few days before the fleet of the king of Gaul arrived; and the servants of the king were vexed because of this thing.

3. For verily, had the ships of the king of Britain remained until the arrival of their enemies, they would have been like unto a lion, when he is taken in the net of the hunters.

4. Howbeit, the servants of the king of Gaul, pursued after the men of Britain, and the ships came before the harbor wherein the navy of Britain had taken shelter, even before the city of New-York.

5. And when the servants of the king of Britain, even the mariners and all the valiant men, saw the ships of their enemies, they bestirred themselves, and encouraged one another, and there was great strife amongst the men of war, inasmuch as the whole multitude desired to go forth to the battle; it was the strife of honor, and was decided by lot.

6. Nevertheless the ships of the king of Gaul were quiet, and remained eleven days without

doing any thing against the ships of their enemies, and on the twelfth day they hoisted up their anchors, and steered their course to the Island of Rhode.

7. Now there was on the Island, a garrison of soldiers, servants to the king of Britain; and it was determined by *George*, the chief captain of all the armies of Columbia, to take the garrison captives.

8. But the enterprise failed, and the cause thereof was on this wise: for it came to pass, that the chief captain of the ships of the king of Britain, pursued after the ships of the king of Gaul; and it was even so, that as they were preparing for an assault, lo! a great storm arose and dispersed the ships.

9. And the navy of Gaul was damaged, and suffered much by the storm, so that they were fain to flee to the town of Boston, to repair the ships that were hurt.

10. Howbeit, there was a sharp conflict between the people of the Provinces who were on the Island, and the soldiers of the garrison, and there fell down slain on each side, between two and three hundred men.

CHAP. XL.

Major General Grey, with a party of the British, surprise and put to death with their bayonets, nearly a whole regiment of American dragoons, commanded by Col. Baylor, at Old Tapaan.

NOW there was a man in the host of Britain, whose sur-name was *Grey;* he was a chief captain in the host, and he went forth to seek forage; and certain of the valiant men followed after him, and they went into the open country.

2. And it was told a certain captain of the host of the people of the Provinces, how that the men of Britain were gone forth to forage and distress the husbandmen.

3. Then he gathered together a band of men, and they were gathered together:

4. And the sur-name of the captain was *Baylor;* he commanded a company of horsemen: and they took their way towards a certain place, called in the vernacular tongue, Old Tapaan; and being weary with hard travelling, they tarried there.

5. And when it was night, and the horsemen were fallen asleep; lo! the men of Britain, who followed after *Grey*, fell suddenly upon them, and slew them with a great slaughter.

6. Howbeit, a certain captain of the men of Britain, spared about forty persons, and they became captive to the men of Britain: he was not like unto *Grey*, the captain, for his bowels yearned towards the people, when they pleaded for their lives.

7. O mercy, how amiable art thou at all times! and what is the warrior without thee!

is he not a barbarian? a monster set loose to scourge the human race, on whom the creator hath set a mark, like he did on *Cain*, that all men may shun him as the destroyer.

8. The glory of Britain passeth away like a shadow; her degenerate sons consume her fame; she is verily, like unto a harlot, whose virtue has vanished, and whose beauty is withered.

9. O Albion, thou wast once the desire of all nations! thou sat as a queen in the midst of Europe! the mildness of thy laws were the admiration and envy of thy neighbours, and thy sons were honored in foreign lands.

10. But now thou art lightly esteemed, and the people whom thou scornest are become mighty in power; yea, they say within themselves, The mighty are fallen! and by the strength of our arms, we have brought down the pride of Britain! her haughty spirit is humbled! the days of her triumphing is at an end.

11. Say no more amongst yourselves, We will be avenged on such a nation; for lo! you could not stand before this people.

CHAP. XLI.

The British forces are successful under General Prevost, and Colonel Campbell, and establish themselves in Savannah.

AND it came to pass, about the end of the year, that there was war in the Southern Provinces, even in Georgia.

2. And the men of Britain gathered themselves together under a certain captain, whose sur-name was *Campbell*; he was from the country of Caledonia, and a servant of the king of Britain.

3. And the people of the Provinces were gathered together under *Robert*, * who was a chief captain under the great Sanhedrim.

4. And he went forth before the people, to oppose the soldiers of Britain, and waited for them in the way.

5. And when *Campbell* heard thereof, he sent a mighty man of valor, whose sur-name was *Baird*, and a company of soldiers went along with him.

6. Now these men took a circuit, and they had an Ethiopian for a guide; and when they had gotten to the place appointed them, then the men of Britain who were with *Campbell*, the captain, rushed upon the people who were gathered together under *Robert*.

7. And the people were discomfited, inasmuch as the men of Britain environed them round about; and there were slain of the people of the Provinces, about one hundred men, and four hundred and fifteen were made captives.

8. Moreover, they took a strong hold, that was built upon the river, even the river Savannah, and two score and eight destroying engines, the ships and the merchandize; furthermore, they took captive, one score and eighteen officers, and one score and three mortars, part of which were made of brass, and part of iron.

9. The chief town of the province, and a-

* General Robert Howe.

bundance of spoil, and large stores of provision for the host; all these things did the men of Britain take in the space of a few hours.

10. And after this, it came to pass, that a chief captain, whose sur-name was *Prevost*, and a large company of the servants of the king of Britain, joined the former company, and they became one band, and pitched their tents in that place.

11. Then the people of the Provinces who had escaped from the battle, fled up the river and escaped, and many of them went to their own habitations; for their spirits were sunken, because of the men of Britain.

12. And there was peace throughout the province of Georgia; and the king's courts were set up as in time past; and there was rest and quietness in the land.

CHAP. XLII.

General Wayne's successful expedition at Stoney Point—the fort, after being in possession of the Americans a few days, is evacuated, and reposted by the British.

THEN it came to pass, in the one thousand seven hundred and seventy-ninth year of the Christian Hegira, in the seventh month, and on the fifteenth day of the month; a chief captain of the host of Columbia, went against a strong hold, called by the people of the Provinces, Stoney Point.

2. The name of the captain, was *Wayne*, he was one of the worthies who followed after

George, the chief captain, and his name was much set by.

3. Now the hold was defended by valiant men, and no man could approach nigh thereto, but with great jeopardy: Howbeit *Wayne* put his life in his hand, and the men who were with him, were men of valour.

4. And it was about the eleventh hour of the night, when the people went against the hold to take it.

5. And two small companies, twenty in each company, with their captains, *Gibbons* and *Knox*, went before the men of war; and these were called the *forlorn hope*.

6. And it was so, as they came nigh unto the hold, the men of Britain shot at them from the walls, and seventeen of each company were slain.

7. Nevertheless, *Wayne* and the men who were with him, rushed forwards, as a wide wasting stream, and gat into the hold, and the garrison beholding the valiant acts of the men of war, their spirits sunk within them.

8. Then they delivered up the hold and all that was therein, unto the chief captain, *Wayne*, who took the garrison captive.

9. And there were slain of the servants of the king, about threescore and three persons, and five hundred and two score and three men, were made captives.

10. And there fell of the people of the Provinces, about fourscore and eighteen valiant men.

11. And the great Sanhedrim honored the captains: moreover, they gave to each of them

a medal, whereon was engraved, a curious device emblematical of their exploit.

12. To *Wayne*, they gave a medal of fine gold curiously wrought; and to the other two captains, * to each of them a silver one, wrought in like manner.

13. Furthermore, they congratulated *George*, the chief captain, inasmuch as he by his wisdom, had projected the enterprise, and had the direction of the undertaking.

14. And the armour-bearer of *Wayne*, was promoted to be a captain: but the people spared the garrison, and did not put them to death, as the men of Britain had done.

15. And when tidings came to *Henry*, how that the strong hold was taken, he gathered together an army and came out to take it again, from the people of the Provinces.

16. But when *George* heard thereof, he thought it not convenient to defend the hold, inasmuch, as it would cost the lives of many men, and the hold was not so desirable a possession as to make it worth the life of one of the people.

17. So the people were commanded to depart from thence, after they had destroyed the works, and removed the implements of war, and all the stuff that was therein.

18. And *Henry*, who was the king's chief captain, took the hold on the third day after that the people of the Provinces had gotten possession thereof.

* Lieut. Col. Fleury, and Major Stewart.

CHAP. XLIII.

Spain declares war against Great Britain. Proceedings of the British in Carolina.

IN the sixth month, on the sixteenth day of the month, the king of Spain joined himself to the enemies of the king of Britain.

2. For the servants of *George*, the king, had in a former war, taken a strong hold from the Spanish king, the name thereof was Gibraltar.

3. It was situated near the sea, and was a desirable place, inasmuch as no ship could pass, without first obtaining permission of the governor of the garrison.

4. Moreover it was built upon a rock, that looked towards the four corners of the earth, to the North and to the South, to the East and to the West.

5. And the king of Spain beheld the hold with an envious eye, inasmuch as it was near unto his kingdom, and had been taken from him by the servants of *George*, the king, at unawares.

6. So he brought a strong army against it, even a very great multitude, and he planted batteries against it, and essayed to beat down the walls thereof, but he could not prevail; for the hold was very strong, and valiant men defended the place, and shot down the servants of the king from the battlements thereof.

7. Moreover the servants of the king of Gaul, even a mighty army came against the hold, and joined themselves to the servants of the king of Spain; the bellowing of the destroying engines,

was such as had not been known in the reign of *George*, the king, nor in the reign of his father, nor his father's father.

8. And the governor, whose sur-name was *Elliot*, and all the soldiers in the hold, gat great honor; the servants of the two kings, failed to accomplish their enterprise, but were cast down in their minds, as thou mayest read in the book of *Ramsay*, the scribe, and also in the book of the siege, written by an officer of the garrison.

9. For the scribe holdeth it not expedient at this time, to record the acts of nations who were at war with the king of Britain, save only the people of the Provinces, with whom he had sojourned from the days of his youth.

10. Know then, that the great Sanhedrim, being mindful of their brethren in the Southern Provinces, appointed *Lincoln* to be chief captain, who was to order the battle against the men of Britain, and to lead forth the people of the Provinces against them.

11. He was a valiant man, and dwelt in the Southern province, called Carolina, and the chief city of the province was named Charlestown.

12. This province was the Columbian Aceldama: * rage and revenge twin-monsters from the infernal regions, stalked from house to house! and from cottage to cottage!

13. Their voracious jaws distilled human gore! and their impious hands were besmear'd with the blood of thousands!

14. Mercy! the darling offspring of heaven! the friend of man! beheld with a glistening eye

* The field of blood.

their destructive progress, and dropt a tear for the madness and folly of man!

15. Disgusted with scenes of cruelty and bloodshed, she flew to the bright courts of her father, where she bewailed in secret the dire effects of destructive war!

16. Here those who were brethren, the sons of one mother, strove together in the field! neighbour made war upon neighbour! and those who had been united by the strong bands of friendship, slew each other! yea, they watched by the way-side, as the panther watcheth for the fawn in the forest!

17. Nevertheless, they called themselves the disciples of the great Prophet and Founder of the Christian sect; who is called in the Latin tongue "Jesu Christi Salvator Hominem;" and who said to his followers, "Resist not evil, and love your enemies."

18. "My soul, come not thou within their secrets; unto their assemblies, mine honor, be not thou united; so shalt thou be at peace, and thy reward shall be sure."

19. The storms and tempests that overtake the intemperate, shall not come near thee; thou shalt enjoy with rapture the feast of reason, if thy feet turn not aside from the paths of rectitude.

20. Wisdom shall dwell with thee, she shall make thee acquainted with thy divine origin, she will shew thee what a wonderful thing is man! "How noble in reason! how excellent in faculties! in form and moving, how express and admirable! in action, how like an angel! in apprehension, how like a God! The wonder of angels, the paragon of animals!"

CHAP. XLIV.

Major Lee surprises the British garrison at Powles Hook. Unsuccessful expedition against Penobscott.

NOW there was a certain young man from Virginia, and his name was *Lee.* *

2. He was a star of the first magnitude in the rising empire of Columbia, he was a chief among the warriors of the Provinces.

3. His rising glory shone forth like the beams of the sun, his valiant acts eclipsed the fame of his companions; they beheld in him the *Washington* of a future day.

4. And it came to pass, in the same year, in the sixth month, on the nineteenth day of the month, that the young man, even the young man *Lee,* went against a garrison of the men of Britain, at Powles Hook.

5. And there was but a small company with *Lee,* nevertheless they were valiant men, whose hearts were true, and whose love for the great Saphedrim was perfect.

6. And the number of men who went against the garrison, were about three hundred two score and ten men.

7. And lo! when they came against the garrison and assaulted it, the men of Britain fled; howbeit, one score and ten persons of the garrison were slain, and eight score were taken captives.

8. This was one of the valiant acts of the young man *Lee;* and the princes of the Provinces honored him with many honors.

* Major Lee.

9. Moreover, they gave him a medal of pure gold, of fine carved work, wrought by the hands of a cunning workman, that his children and his children's children to many generations, might know of his valiant acts, and emulate his fame.

10. But it came to pass, after these things, that the men of Britain, even a small company of them, were prosperous in another place, even at Penobscott; where they built a strong hold, and placed a garrison of soldiers therein; and the name of the captain of the garrison, was *Macleane*.

11. And when the people of the town of Boston, knew of a certainty that the men of Britain were strengthening themselves at Penobscott they were troubled.

12. And they spake and said, Come let us go against the servants of the king of Britain, and chace them from our borders before they become too strong for us, (for the hold was not yet finished.)

13. And the men of war gathered themselves together, and they prepared armed ships, and *Saltonstall* * a mighty man of war, was captain of the ships; *Lovel* † a man of that country, went forth before the men of war.

14. And the people went forth willingly against the men of Britain, for their wrath burned against the king, even as the fire burned upon the altar.

15. And when the captain of the garrison was told that the people of the Provinces were com-

* Com. Saltonstall.

† General Lovel.

ing against him, he encouraged the men of the garrison to strengthen the hold.

16. Howbeit, it was not finished when the people of the Provinces came against it; nevertheless *Macleane*, the captain of the garrison, refused to deliver the hold to the people of the Provinces.

17. And when they had fought against the hold for the space of fourteen days, and were weary because the men of Britain held it against them.

18. Then the chief men of war amongst the people, consulted together, what they should do, and they said amongst themselves, Let us even now take the strong hold by force, and let the young men go forth in their might, and scale the walls thereof; so will the garrison be smitten with fear, and we will take them captives.

19. But it came to pass, that while the people were assembled together about this thing, lo! the tall ships * of the king of Britain, appeared nigh unto the hold.

20. Then were the people dismayed, inasmuch as they knew that the ships were strong and mighty, and that the destroying engines in the ships were many in number.

21. And it was so, that the mariners in the king's ships, were too hard for the men of Boston, and they were fain to flee into the wilderness, and leave the ships a prey to the men of Britain.

22. And the people went every man to his own place, and the garrison was saved.

* Commanded by Sir George Collier.

CHAP. XLV.

Southern expeditions—General Prevost marches towards Charlestown, &c.

NOW the war raged in many places in the land of Columbia:

2. It is a mighty continent, and is bounded by the lands and seas near the Artic Pole, on the North; and by the Atlantic sea on the East; and by the Southern ocean on the South; and by the Pacific ocean, which divides it from Asia on the West; the length thereof, being between eight and nine thousand miles, from North to South; and about three thousand miles is the breadth thereof.

3. It is a land which our fore-fathers knew not, even *Solomon* with all his wisdom was a stranger to it.

4. The country was called Columbia, in similitude to the name of a famous sea captain, * a native of Genoa, who through many perils arrived on the coast thereof, in the fourteen hundred and ninety-second year of the Christian Hegira, on the tenth month, on the seventeenth day of the month, was the land found out.

5. And it came to pass, that the servants of the king of Britain in the Southern province, even in Georgia, moved towards Port-Royal in Carolina, and landed on the Island to take possession of it.

6. But it came to pass, that *Moultrie*, a mighty man of war, drove them off the Island; and a great part of the officers amongst the men

* Christopher Columbus.

of Britain, were slain; the name of their captain was *Gardiner;* * and the number of the men who followed after him, was about two hundred.

7. And there fell of the people of the Provinces, eight persons, and the wounded were one score and two men. Now one of the persons who was slain, was *Wilkins;* he had charge of the destroying engines, and was beloved by the people; he was the father of several children, and was the first officer in the province, that was slain in the war with the men of Britain.

8. Then the servants of the king of Britain pitched their tents at Ebenezer, and they sent messengers amongst the sect of the tories, and said: If now ye are the king's friends, why then do ye delay to shew yourselves men of truth, when the enemies of the king are yet in your borders? Thus did the men of Britain stir up the sect of the tories to fight against their brethren.

9. And when the tories had heard all the words of the messengers, they came out of their lurking places and armed themselves, and set out to strengthen the men of Britain.

10. And as they passed through the country, they plundered the inhabitants and spoiled their goods.

11. Whereupon the people being enraged, they gathered themselves together and pursued after them, and a certain man whose sur-name was *Pickens,* † went before them.

12. And they overtook the sect of the tories

* Major Gardiner.

† Colonel Pickens.

at a brook of water, called Kettle Creek; and they slew two score of them, and recovered the spoil, and their chief man was slain, whose name was *Boyd.* *

13. And the residue were discomfited and fled to their own houses, and the people of the Provinces hanged five of them on a tree, even as a shepherd hangeth a dog for worrying the sheep.

14. Now the servants of the king of Britain were encamped on one side of the river Savannah, and the people of the Provinces under *Lincoln*, a chief captain, were on the other side thereof, even at the Black Swamp opposite to Augusta.

15. And *Lincoln* sent a chief captain whose name was *Ash*, † and fifteen hundred of the servants of the great Sanhedrim, passed over the river, and they encamped at Briar Creek.

16. But it came to pass, that *Prevost*, captain of the servants of the king of Britain, came upon them at unawares, and many of them fled; and seven score and fifty of the people were slain, and one hundred and sixty-two were taken captive.

17. And *Moultrie*, knowing of a certainty that the men of Britain were strong and many, he retired from them.

18. Then *Lincoln*, the chief captain, sent three hundred of the men who followed after him, to help the people who were with *Moultrie.*

19. But the greater part of the people fol-

* Colonel Boyd.

† General Ash.

lowed after *Lincoln*, who was minded to go to the chief town of the province of Georgia.

20. But when he was told that *Prevost*, the chief captain of the king's servants, was on his way to the chief town * in the province of the South, then he pursued after him, even to Charlestown.

21. Now the men of Britain took the highway along the sea-coast, and *Moultrie* and the men who were with him, retired from the servants of the king.

22. And the men of Britain went on their way, and the inhabitants of the town made haste to strengthen themselves, and they built battlements round about, and planted the destroying engines thereon.

23. And there were gathered together in the town, three thousand and three hundred men; who were all true men and servants to the great Sanhedrim.

CHAP. XLVI.

General Prevost before Charlestown—Sundry Propositions rejected by the British; who being informed of the approach of the Americans, filed off towards the Islands near the sea.

AND as *Prevost*, the chief captain, came nigh unto the town, the inhabitants and the men of war consulted amongst themselves, in what manner they should receive the men of Britain.

* Charlestown.

2. And they sent messengers to *Prevost*, and offered in the name of the inhabitants of the province, to remain quiet, and wait the issue of the war between the king of Britain, and the people of the Provinces.

3. And they spake and said: If the king of Britain should prove too strong for the people of the Provinces, then we will be subject to the king; but if the people of the Provinces should prove too strong for the king of Britain, then we will serve the great Sanhedrim, and be as the rest of the Provinces.

4. Howbeit, *Prevost* would hearken to none of these things, but commanded that the men in the town should deliver themselves captives to the servants of the king of Britain.

5. Notwithstanding, when *Prevost* was told that *Lincoln* was nigh at hand, and a large company with him, he departed from the town to the sea-coast, not very far from the town.

6. And there they pitched their tents; and the people of the Provinces, under *Lincoln*, also pitched their tents nigh unto the men of Britain.

7. And it came to pass, in the sixth month, on the twentieth day of the month; that about twelve hundred of the people of the Provinces, attacked about seven hundred of the men of Britain at Stono Ferry.

8. And the men of Britain were very strong, for they had cast up banks to secure themselves against their enemies; and the battle continued for the space of one and twenty minutes, and there were slain and wounded of the people of the Provinces, seven score and ten persons.

9. And *Roberts*, * a mighty man of valor, was slain; he was from the country of Albion, and helped the people against the servants of the king; he had been a warrior in the land of his nativity, in the days of his youth.

10. Then many of the people were discomfited and grew weary of the war, and went to their own houses, and followed after *Lincoln*, the chief captain, no more.

11. And the men of Britain, they also departed, and halted not until they came to Port-Royal, where they left a garrison; and the captain of the garrison was named *Maitland*. †

12. The residue journeyed on their way until they came to Savannah, the place of their encampment.

13. Now they plundered the inhabitants, and gat much spoil; howbeit, it was not much to their honour, and the people of the land eyed them with an evil eye.

CHAP. XLVII.

Count D'Estaing arrives on the coast—Unsuccessful expedition of the French and Americans against Savannah.

NOW it came to pass, that *D'Estaing*, chief captain of the navy of the king of Gaul, came with the king's ships into the river Savannah, to help the people of the Provinces to drive the

* Col. Roberts.

† Col. Maitland.

men of Britain from the southern province, even from Georgia.

2. And the ships cast anchor in the river, nigh unto the strong hold which the men of Britain occupied; moreover, they blocked up the harbour so that no ship could pass in or out, except those to whom the chief captain gave permission.

3. Now there were in the river, four ships * that belonged to the king of Britain; and *James*,† a famous sea-captain and servant to the king of Britain, was the commander of the ships.

4. And it was so, that the ships and all their tackling, fell a prey into the hands of *D'Estaing*.

5. And when the people of the Provinces, heard that *D'Estaing* had come into the river with a large company of soldiers and mariners, to fight against the garrison and to take it;

6. Then they rejoiced with an exceeding great joy, and they said amongst themselves, Verily the men of Britain are entrapt, and we will take them even as patridges are taken in a net.

7. For will they not be enclosed round about, even by the waters of the river, and the king's ships, on the one side, and by a mighty army on the other side; so we will enter into their strong places, and the hearts of their valiant men will melt like wax, when it is spread before the fire.

8. Then there will be rest in our land, and every man shall set under the shade of his own forest, as in days past, and the shouting of the warrior shall be turned into melody, and songs of gladness shall be heard in the groves.

* One Fifty-gun ship, and 3 Frigates.

† Sir James Wallace.

9. The affrighted virgins shall return to their cottages, they shall gather together at the close of the day, when they rest from their labour, and tell to each other the valiant acts of their beloveds.

10. Thus did the people encourage each other; for they looked on the men of Britain, even as the eagle looketh upon the fawn that sleepeth upon the sides of the mountains of Alleghany.

11. They came forth in troops, and joined themselves to the servants of the king of Paul, they esteemed it but a light thing to force their strong holds, inasmuch as their courage was revived by the arrival of the ships.

12. Now when *D'Estaing* was before the hold, and before the people of the Provinces under *Lincoln* had arrived, he commanded *Prevost*, the captain of the garrison, to deliver up the hold to the king his master.

13. Now *Prevost* answered *D'Estaing* warily, and the words that he spake were words of subtilty, and *D'Estaing* was beguiled thereby.

14. For *Prevost* spake after this manner, saying: Speak clearly now to thy servant and plain, that I may understand; so will I send an answer back to thee, touching all those things, whereof thou hast signified thy pleasure.

15. Then *D'Estaing* answered and said: It is not for me O ye men of Britain! it is not for me to propose terms to you. Is it not the part of the besieged to propose such matters? send therefore in time, before the destroying engines begin to cast forth their thunders.

16. Now *Prevost* wanted only to gain time, for he expected to be strengthened by a large company of the soldiers of Britain, from Beau-

fort, who were commanded by a valiant man, whose sur-name was *Maitland.*

17. Then *Prevost*, the captain of the garrison, spake smooth words unto *D'Estaing*, and said: Suffer thy servant, I pray thee, to have time to consider of a suitable answer to send, and that I may consult with the men of war about this matter, and let the destroying engines cease to utter their thunders; for verily thou knowest, that the thoughts of the heart are confused thereby.

18. Then *D'Estaing* answered and said: Speak now to me, and say how long wilt thou, that I wait for thy answer?

19. Then said *Prevost*, the captain of the king's garrison: If thou wilt grant to thy servants twenty and four hours, then will we return an answer to all that thou hast proposed.

20. And *D'Estaing* hearkened unto the words of *Prevost*, for he knew not that he spake the words of subtilty; and he granted the petition of the garrison.

21. And it came to pass, that before the end of the given time, that *Maitland*, and the soldiers of the king of Britain, gat safe into the hold; and the men of war shouted with a great shout.

22. And on the evening of the same day, the army of the people of the Provinces, under *Lincoln*, and the army of the king of Gaul, were joined together, and became one band.

23. And they besieged the hold, and raised banks against it, and they planted the destroying engines on the banks which they had cast up.

24. And the men of the garrison strengthened the hold, and several hundred of Ethiopians were

employed to work day and night under the direction of a man well skilled in such matters, whose sur-name was *Moncrief*. *

25. Now when the destroying engines began to utter their thunders, *Prevost*, the servant of the king of Britain, and chief captain of the garrison, sent out a messenger to request permission for all the women and children to have liberty to go out of the hold.

26. Howbeit, the chief captains, *D'Estaing* and *Lincoln*, refused to grant his request, inasmuch as they suspected that *Prevost* only intended to deceive them, as he had shewn himself to be a crafty man at the beginning.

27. Moreover, they expected the hold would be given up in a shorter time, if the women and children were confined therein, and that the captain made a shew of pity, to lengthen out the siege.

28. But it came to pass, that the chief engineers were consulted about the events of the siege; who reported to the chief captains, that the hold was too strong to be taken in that way, but with great loss of time.

29. It was therefore concluded, to scale the walls thereof, and to storm the battlements.

30. And on the ninth day of the tenth month, in the one thousand seven hundred and seventy-ninth year of the Christian Hegira, were the two armies gathered together; even the army of the king of Gaul, and the host of the people of the Provinces.

31. The soldiers of the king of Gaul, were in number three thousand five hundred fighting

* Major Moncrief.

men; and of the servants of the great Sanhedrim, six hundred valiant men, and three hundred two score and ten persons from Charlestown, who went willingly to the battle.

32. They went on towards the hold like lions, and like fierce lions they rushed on their enemies!

33. But it came to pass, that the men in the hold stood ready, every man with his weapons of war; and the destroying engines belched out their thunders, and cast down many to the earth!

34. And the men of war were fain to give ground, and fled from the fury of the destroying engines; and the men of the garrison got great honor.

35. And there were slain and wounded of the servants of the king of Gaul, six hundred one score and seventeen men; and of the people of the Provinces, two hundred. *Polaski*, a notable warrior, was wounded even unto death.

36. Now the number of the men in the garrison, was about three thousand, who were mighty men of valor; and not many of them were slain, inasmuch as they were in a place of defence, and secure from the assaults of their enemies.

CHAP. XLVIII.

Subsequent operations to the Southward. General Clinton besieges Charlestown. General Lincoln capitulates, &c.

NOW when it was told to *Clinton*, chief captain of the men of Britain, who were warring with the people of the Provinces in the land of Columbia, that *D'Estaing* was beaten in battle, and had left the coast.

2. Then he prepared to go to the Southern Provinces, and renew the war in those parts: for he thirsted after honor, and the renown of the warrior was precious in his sight.

3. Therefore he gathered together a choice company, and put them into the ships of the king his master; and *Arbuthnot* was captain of the ships.

4. And he left *Kniphausen* to be captain in his stead, in the city of New-York.

5. Then the ships, with the armed men, and great store of implements for war, launched forth into the great deep.

6. Now the voyage was perilous and they were in great danger, and the horses designed for the war were lost, and many of the destroying engines; nevertheless, the men got safe to land.

7. In the year one thousand seven hundred and eighty, in the second month, on the eleventh day of the month, did the men of Britain land; and the place where they landed, was about two hundred and forty furlongs from Charlestown, the chief city of the South province, called Carolina.

8. And they pitched their tents on John's Island, at Stono Ferry; and not many days afterwards, they gained possession of James' Island, and a certain place called in the language of that country, Wappoo Cut.

9. Then they pitched their tents on the banks of the river, even Ashley river, opposite to the city.

10. Now the governor of the province, whose name was *Rutledge*, commanded all the people to come forth against their mighty adversaries, the men of Britain.

11. Howbeit, they were not mindful to obey the governor; for the spirits of the people were quenched, they remembered the battle at Savannah, and fear took hold of their minds.

12. Nevertheless, the people who were in the town, behaved themselves valiantly, and toiled hard to strengthen the town; and *Lincoln* was over the men of war.

13. And the men of Britain were strengthened by twelve hundred men from Savannah, and they besieged the city round about.

14. And they cast up banks against the city, and prepared to batter the walls thereof; and the town's men also made ready for the battle.

15. And the ships of the king moved up the river, and as they passed by the Island of *Sullivan*, *Pinckney*, a captain and a valiant man, shot at the ships and they were marred.

16. And it came to pass, in the fourth month, on the twentieth day of the month; that *Clinton*, the king's captain, was strengthened by three thousand men, from the city of York.

17. Therefore, on the morning of the next day, the men of war, even the chief men in the

town consulted together, and sent a messenger to *Clinton*, the king's captain, with certain proposals.

18. But he would not hearken to the words of the messenger, for he supposed that he should shortly take the city and all that was therein.

19. Then the people who were with *Lincoln* fought valiantly, and shot at the men of Britain from the battlements, and from the walls of the city; and moreover they hoped that their brethren in the Provinces, would come to their help.

20. But when all hopes were fled, and the men of Britain were preparing to assault the town; the men of war who were therein, judged it to be most expedient to hearken to the words of *Clinton*, the king's captain, for they could not long withstand the force of the destroying engines, which cast out of their mouths fearful things, and horrible to name!

21. They were called bombs, and were made of iron; they fell into the town, they burst asunder, and the broken pieces thereof flew about the streets of the city: and woe unto that man that was smitten by them! Yea verily, for they marred whatsoever they touched, and respected not the person of any.

22. And in the fifth month, on the eleventh day of the month, the city was delivered up to the men of Britain; and the men of war that were therein, became captives to the men of Britain.

23. And on the morning of the next day, *Leslie*, a captain and servant of the king of Britain, took possession of the town.

24. Now the slain and wounded of the men of

Britain, were two hundred three score and five persons; and of the people of the Provinces, about the same number.

25. And the number of the captives taken in the town, were five thousand men; howbeit, the soldiers of the garrison were only two thousand five hundred: and amongst the captives, were a large number of the chief men of the Province; and four hundred of the destroying engines were taken.

CHAP. XLIX.

Subsequent operations in South Carolina, 1780.

AND it came to pass, in the fifth month, on the twenty-second day of the month, that *Clinton* sent forth a decree throughout all the Southern provinces.

2. And the writing of the decree was made known to all the people; and the substance of the decree was on this wise:

3. That inasmuch as the servants of the great king, the king of Britain, have overcome all those who rose up against him;

4. Therefore, be it known unto all people, unto whom this decree shall come, as well the inhabitants of the cities as of the forests,

5. That from and after the date hereof, if any one shall be found to disobey the commands of the king, or oppose his princely power, either in word or deed;

6. Their houses shall be taken from them,

their lands and their flocks shall become a prey to the servants of the king; and they shall be accounted as aliens and enemies to his royal house, and be deprived from beholding the smiles of his benign countenance.

7. Furthermore, if there are any yet remaining in these Provinces, who have committed grievous sins against the person or laws of this great king, whose power is unbounded, and whose mercy is great towards the disobedient;

8. Let them instantly come into our presence, and confess their crimes, and the royal sceptre shall be extended towards them, and their rebellion shall be blotted out of the king's book.

9. And they shall be called the king's friends, and be promoted to honor; yea, they shall have a name amongst his chief servants.

10. Now the men of Britain were lifted up in their minds, for they supposed that the spirit of rebellion was quenched in the Southern Provinces, and that the people were subdued.

11. Howbeit, fearing lest their brethren from the other provinces, would come and stir them up to rebel, they placed garrisons of soldiers in many places in the province.

12. Then *Clinton*, the king's captain, left the province, and went back again to the city of York, and great part of the host went with him; howbeit, he left four thousand valiant men, to keep the Southern province; and *Cornwallis* was chief captain over the men of war.

13. Now, though the inhabitants were humbled, and the fear of the men of Britain weighed down their spirits, nevertheless, they secretly desired their overthrow.

14. And they communed together in secret,

and encouraged one another to hope that they were not forgotten by the great Sanhedrim.

15. Now there was a valiant man of that country, who had not submitted to the servants of the king; he was as a thorn in the sides of the men of war, and his name was *Sumpter.* *

16. *Marion,* also was next unto him, and was valiant in battle: these two men were like hornets; they let the men of Britain have no rest all the while they remained in the province.

17. They frequently came upon them at unawares, and surprised them in their places of defence.

18. Succeeding generations will hear of their fame, and rejoice, and their valiant acts will be known in distant kingdoms; strangers shall praise them in the streets of the city; their names shall be mentioned amongst the valiant of the earth; even as the worthies of *David,* are mentioned in the Book of the Chronicles of the kings of Israel.

CHAP. L

The Battle of Camden, successful on the part of the British. 1780.

NOW the princes of the Provinces, even the great Sanhedrim, were troubled at the tidings from the Southern province.

2. And they consulted together, how they

* Col. Sumpter.

should help their brethren who were oppressed by the servants of the king of Britain.

3. And it came to pass, that they cast their eyes on *Horatio*, * remembering his valiant acts, and how he took captive the Northern army.

4. And when a convenient time was come, they appointed *Horatio* to lead forth an army to oppose the men of Britain in the Southern province, even in Carolina.

5. And *Horatio* and the men who followed after him, journeyed forwards, and came to a place, the name thereof was *Clermont*; and he published a decree in the name of the great Sanhedrim, wherein he invited the people of the province to join themselves to the host of Columbia, who were come to drive the servants of the king from their borders.

6. And it was so, that a great multitude flocked to the banners of the great Sanhedrim; and the number of the people who were with *Horatio*, was about four thousand men.

7. Nevertheless, there were amongst them only nine hundred fighting men, and three score and ten horsemen; the residue of the host were called militia, who were not to be depended upon in the day of battle.

8. And when *Cornwallis* knew of a certainty that *Horatio* was coming to offer him battle, he hastened to meet him, and about one thousand and seven hundred footmen, and three hundred horsemen followed after him.

9. And they came to *Camden*, nigh where *Horatio* was encamped, in the eighth month, on the fifteenth day of the month; and when the

* General Gates.

sun was set, the army of Britain went forth to fall upon the people of the Provinces, in their camp at *Clermont.*

10. On the same night did *Horatio* go forth, and the host of the people followed after him; and it came to pass, that they were met by the servants of the king of Britain, and *Armand,* * a chief captain of the army, and who led the horsemen, was assaulted by the horsemen of Britain, and the men who were with *Armand* were discomfited and fled.

11. Then were the men of war confused, and wist not what they should do: howbeit, the people were brought into right order and kept their places; nevertheless, a valiant man, in whom *Horatio* put great confidence, was slain.

12. And when the dawning of the next day appeared, there was a very fierce battle; and it came to pass, that the men from Virginia, even the militia of that province, were terrified, and fled from the men of Britain, who rushed upon them as the horse rushed into the battle.

13. The militia also from the province of North Carolina, they fled from the men of Britain: howbeit, the people of the Provinces who were fighting on the right † of the host, behaved valiantly.

14. Nevertheless, they were fain to give place to the soldiers of Britain, who drave them from off the field of battle, and pursued them upon swift horses, and the captain of the horsemen was named *Tarleton.*

15. Now there was a foreigner who had joined

* Col. Armand.

† Right Wing.

himself to the people of the Provinces, and was skilful in war; he was next to *Horatio*, he was stiled a Baron, and his name was *Kalb*; this man was sore wounded and taken captive, and the next day he died, for his wounds were grievous; and the princes of the Provinces ordered a monument to be erected to commemorate his worthy acts.

16. And the men of Britain took from *Horatio*, eight of the destroying engines, and of carriages, * two hundred, and great store of goods and stuff for the host.

17. And many men were wounded and slain in the battle: and after these things, many of the people of the Provinces fell away to the men of Britain, for they were restrained by fear from helping their brethren any more.

18. Now when tidings came to the king's chief counsellors, that the people of the Provinces were smitten before the servants of the king, they were very joyful, and they praised *Cornwallis*, the captain; and they prepared to strengthen themselves yet more and more.

19. Verily they were like unto men who are in danger of drowning in deep waters, who seeing the small branches of the willow floating upon the surface, they hastily grasp them, and their hopes perish.

* Waggons.

CHAP. LI.

Major Ferguson of the 71st Regiment, an active partisan, stimulates the disaffected to take up arms in support of the British government—a great number of this description embodies, and after an obstinate resistance are defeated—Ferguson is slain, and the residue made prisoners.

THERE was a man in the army of Britain, who was zealous to serve the king, and he was a valiant man; he stirred up the people to join the men of Britain against the people, even against the servants of the great Sanhedrim.

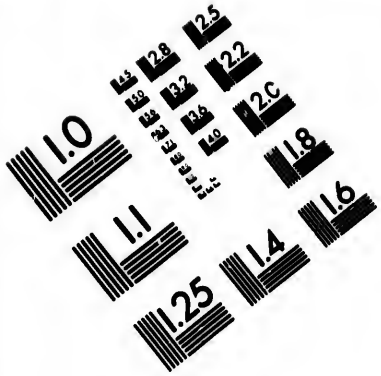
2. And he went to the dwelling places of the sect of the tories, and encouraged them to fight under the banner of *George*, the king, and to make war upon their brethren.

3. And there were gathered together, a large company of the sect of the tories, under *Ferguson*, and they were encamped on King's Mountain, and they were encouraged by the servants of the king of Britain.

4. And it came to pass, that when it was known unto the people of the Provinces, that the sect of the tories were encamped on King's Mountain, and that they were encouraged by the servants of the king of Britain:

5. Then was the wrath of the five chief men kindled against the sect of the tories, and against the servants of the king, was their wrath kindled.

6. And they gathered together an army of men, who went forth against the sect of the tories, who were encamped on King's Mount;



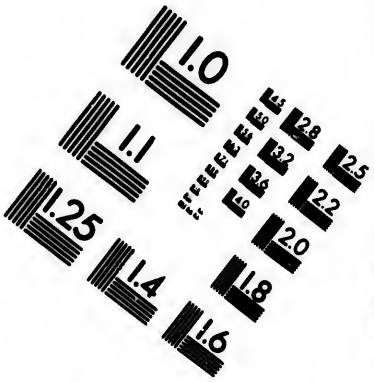
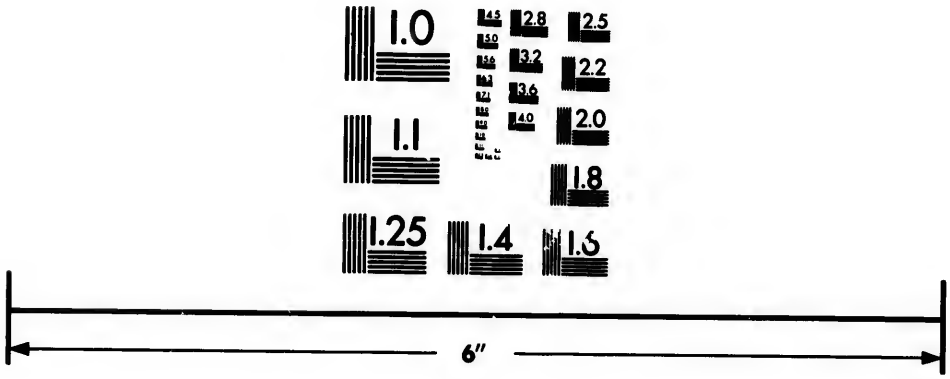


IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic
Sciences
Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503


2.8
3.2
3.6
2.5
2.2
2.0
1.8
1.1
1.0

and the names of the five chief men, were *Campbell, Cleveland, Shelby, Servier,* and *M'Dowell*; the first was from the province of North Carolina, and the rest were from the province of Virginia, where the sweet scented plant groweth, even as the cowslips groweth on the pastures of Albion, for abundance.

7. And the sect of the tories were environed round about; and as the people of the Provinces ascended the mountain, they were driven back again by the sect of the tories: howbeit, they remained near the mountain, and shot at the people on the mountain, and *Ferguson* was slain.

8. Then was the sect of the tories sore amazed, and their spirits failed within them when they saw their champion was slain, and they let fall their weapons of war, and they were all taken captive.

9. And the number of the sect of the tories who were taken captive, was about eight hundred men.

10. And the slain and wounded were three hundred persons, and of the people of the Provinces there were not many slain.

11. Howbeit, a valiant man whose sur-name was *Williams*, was slain; he was an enemy to the king, and sought to oppose to the utmost, the designs of the chief counsellor of the realm of Britain.

12. And it was so, that when the sect of the tories had submitted, the people of the Provinces hanged ten men of them by the neck, and they were strangled with ropes made of the hempen weed, until they were dead.

13. And when it was made known to *Cornwallis* that *Ferguson* was slain, he was troubled;

and leaving a few men at Camden, he fled to Wenusherough. Then the people in the Southern province who loved not the king, and who desired to change;

14. They took courage, and gathered themselves together under *Sumpter*, who was made a chief captain * by the great Sanhedrim.

15. He concealed himself and his men, near the rivers, even the Broad river, the Tiger river, and the river Evorce.

16. And they came out of their lurking places, and they fell upon the men of Britain at unawares: now this man, even *Sumpter*, was a thorn in the sides of the servants of the king of Britain, and they feared to go forth in small companies.

CHAP. LII.

General Arnold's treachery discovered. Andre taken and executed.

AND it came to pass, in the one thousand seven hundred and eightieth year of the Christian Hegira, in the ninth month, on the twenty-first day of the month, that Satan entered the heart of *Benedict*.

2. And he tempted him to deliver up the strong hold, † of which *George*, the chief captain, had made him governor, (even to the servants of the king of Britain;) for *Henry*, the

* General.

† West Point.

chief captain, had offered him large store of gold, and of silver; moreover, he promised he should be a chief captain in the army of Britain.

3. And *Henry* sent a young man whom he loved to manage this business with *Benedict*, and the young man's name was *Andre*; he was beloved by the host of Britain, and his name was much set by; he was a chief man * in the host, and valiant in war, and where the brave were, there was he.

4. And the young man, *Andre*, went into one of the small armed vessels, of the king of Britain, and the vessel moved up the North river, not many furlongs from the hold.

5. And when the evening was far spent, *Benedict* sent a boat to the vessel, to bring the young man, *Andre*, to land.

6. And when he was come safe to land, he consulted with *Benedict* concerning all things whereof he had written to *Henry*. And the dawning of the day appeared, when they had ended their business.

7. And when the young man would have gone back again to the vessel, lo! she had moved down the river; for the people of the Provinces had annoyed the vessel with some of the destroying engines; and the boatmen feared to row the boat to the vessel.

8. And *Benedict* spake to *Andre*, nearly on this wise: Behold! now the vessel in which thou camest is removed, and fear hath taken hold of the boatmen; therefore, it will be better for thee to tarry with me this night, and on the morrow, verily, thou shalt go on thy way, and

* Adjutant General.

some of the young men shall conduct thee to the city.

9. So the young man, even *Andre*, tarried with *Benedict*; and fearing lest some of the people of the Provinces should take him for a servant of the king of Britain, he put off his soldier's apparel, and arrayed himself in plain clothing, and changed his name.

10. And when a convenient time was come, he took his leave of *Benedict*, who gave him a written paper, called by the people in those days, a pass; and it was so, when any of the people were shewn the written paper, they suffered the man to hold on his way in peace.

11. Then went *Andre* forth, and journeyed towards the city, even the city of New-York. And as he was musing upon those things, about which *Henry* had sent him, lo! three men were a lett to him in the way.

12. And the young man called out to the men, and queried with them, saying: From what part of the country are ye, and where is the place of your rest?

13. And the men answered and said: We are dwellers and inhabitants in the country before thee, and we are servants to the king of Britain. Howbeit, they spake in the subtilty of their hearts.

14. Then the young man rejoiced, and shewed not his pass, but said: Even as you are, so am I; my business is great, and requires haste, therefore stay me not for I am an officer of the king, and the chief captain hath need of me.

15. Now *Andre* wist not that the men were enemies: howbeit, they laid hold on him, and took him to their captain; and they found writ-

ten papers in the hand writing of *Benedict* and the plot was found out.

16. Then the captain * of the band, sent the written papers that were found upon the young man, by a messenger, to *George*, the chief captain; and the young man, even the young man *Andre*, he also sent a letter to the chief captain; for he was a ready writer, and his words were enticing; the sound thereof, was as the sound of a well-tuned instrument.

17. And *Andre* also sent a written letter to *Benedict*, and informed him that he was taken captive, and his journey frustrated.

18. And when *Benedict* read the letter, his lips quivered, and he was sore amazed, and he hastily called for his young men who were faithful to him, and he gat into a boat, and the men rowed the boat to the armed vessel in which *Andre* had sailed from the city.

19. Now when *George*, the chief captain, had received the letters, he was astonished; inasmuch, as he had surely believed, that *Benedict* was a true man, and immoveable as the rock on the sea-shore! For had not the princes of the Provinces dignified him with great honor? inasmuch as he had shewn himself a valiant man in battle.

20. And *George*, the chief captain, appointed a council of his chief men, even the chief captains of the host; and the young man, even *Andre*, was brought before the council.

21. And when the council queried with him, concerning those things whereof he stood accused, he answered with dignity, composure,

* Col. Jameson.

and truth; his magnanimity did not forsake him, in the hour of extremity.

22. His Judges, charmed with his accomplishments, were willing to forget the foe, in the youthful warrior; they would gladly have found some other object, to sacrifice upon the altar of justice, and public opinion!

23. They regretted the fatal necessity of cutting off from society, in the prime of life, a youth, whose engaging behaviour had captivated their affections! A shining model of all that was excellent! A Christian, a gentleman, a scholar, a hero!

24. Here the scribe would willingly draw a veil over the closing scene! suffice it to say, that he died regretted by a host of foes; not personally so, but to the cause for which he fell.

25. Even the hardy veteran, whose nervous arm, had dealt death and destruction in the well fought field, felt the force of humanity; and the tear of sensibility trickled down his sunburnt cheek!

26. Even the scribe, at this late hour, hath caught the soft contagion; and is not ashamed to acknowledge, that the fate of *Andre*, entered deep into his soul.

27. Ye fair daughters of Albion! lay aside your ornaments, your silk and scarlet apparel; and put on mourning for *Andre!* The accomplished *Andre* is no more!

28. But in the midst of your sorrow, let this be your consolation: *Andre* died not as the fool dieth! Superior to the terrors of death, he beheld his last moments approach with decent fortitude, and a serene and pleasing countenance!

Thousands and tens of thousands lament his early fall!

29. This was the fatal fruit of treachery! O *Benedict*, how art thou fallen! The demons of destruction laugh at thy defection, and enjoy with malicious pleasure, the consequence of thy fall!

30. The monuments of thy victory on the plains of Saratoga, serve only to blaze forth the death of thy fame.

31. Thy name shall no more be mentioned in the songs of the virgins, nor shall the crown of honour encircle thy temples.

32. Will not every one that meets thee, point with the finger, and say: Lo! there goeth the man who sacrificed his honour on the altar of mammon, and bartered away his good name for the sake of filthy lucre?

CHAP. LIII.

General Greene is appointed to the command of the Southern army, in the room of General Gates. Successful expedition of Lieutenant Colonel Washington, &c.

IN the year of the Christian Hegira, one thousand seven hundred and eighty, in the sixth month, on the sixteenth day of the month, the residue of the army of Columbia in the Southern province, collected together at a certain place called Hillsborough.

2. On the same day did *Nathaniel* * take

* General Greene.

upon him the office of chief captain: for it came to pass, that when the great Sanhedrim had heard that *Horatio*,* and the Southern army, had been beaten by *Cornwallis*, the king's captain, and that the warriors of Columbia could not stand before the men of Britain, they were sore displeased.

3. And their countenances fell, and they, even the princes of the Provinces, secretly reproached *Horatio*; for it grieved them, that the army was smitten before the men of Britain.

4. And they communed with *George*, the chief captain, after this manner, saying: Knowest thou not, that *Cornwallis*, the king's captain, hath beaten *Horatio* in battle, and that our brethren have fled from the servants of the king?

5. And *George* said, yea verily, I know it: then the princes of the Provinces, furthermore spake and said: It is expedient that we send another captain in the room of *Horatio*, that he may go forth before the men of war; so will the spirits of the people revive, and peradventure they will stand before their enemies. Speak therefore, all that is in thine heart, and say if thou knowest any man in the host of the people, that will answer the expectations and desire of the princes of the Provinces.

6. Then answered *George*, the chief captain, and said: there is a man in the army of Columbia, in whom is the spirit of wisdom and understanding, his name is *Nathaniel*; prudence walketh on his right hand, and integrity and perseverance are his constant companions.

* General Gates.

7. And the princes of the Provinces hearkened to the voice of the chief captain, for they had determined beforehand, to remove *Horatio;* inasmuch as he had fled from the servants of the king, and his former services were not regarded.

8. Howbeit, *Horatio* was not cast down for these things; for the spirit of a man was in him, and wisdom fortified his mind against the evils that were allotted to him.

9. He remembered that the celebrated Bard * of Albion said: "This is the state of man:—"To-day he puts forth the tender leaves of "hope, to-morrow blossoms, and bears his "blushing honours thick upon him; the third "day comes a frost, a killing frost; and when "he thinks, good easy man, full surely his "greatness is a ripening—nips his root, and "then he falls!"

10. And it came to pass, that *Nathaniel* was appointed chief captain of the Southern army; and he set out on his journey, and came to Hillsborough on the day of the month beforementioned.

11. Now the heart of *Nathaniel* was not lifted up because of this thing; inasmuch as *Horatio*, his brother in the war, was abased in the eyes of the people; moreover he knew that *Horatio* was a valiant man, and he treated him with the respect due to an elder brother.

12. Furthermore, he justified him in all companies; and in his letters to the princes of the Provinces, the members of the great Sanhedrim, he spake in praise of *Horatio;* and to them he

* Shakespeare.

said: In no part of his conduct, has *Horatio* been to blame, he has done his duty as chief captain, and verily no man can ensure to himself success; for victory is not at the command of the sons of men.

13. And it was so, that not many hours after that *Nathaniel* had assumed the command of the army, that a messenger came and brought tidings, that one of the Lieutenants * from the Columbian army, had been out with a number of men to seek forage for the host.

14. And it came to pass, that as they journeyed along the way, they came nigh unto Clermont, the dwelling place of one of the sect of the tories who had joined himself to the king's servants, and was made a captain † in the army of Britain.

15. Now there were about five score of the sect of the tories collected at the house, and they had strengthened themselves within and without; and they had made a place of defence called a Block-house, and a ditch enclosed it round about; so that it was very strong.

16. Notwithstanding, the Lieutenant being a cunning man, and well knowing he could not get at the house except he had some of the destroying engines with him, therefore he went about to devise a cunning device.

17. He went into the forest of pines, and hewed down one of the tall trees thereof, and he fashioned it with the axe of the workman until he brought it to the likeness of one of the destroying engines, that were used to batter

* Lieut. Col. Washington.

† Col. Rigely.

down the walls of strong holds, and the men stood ready, as they were wont to do when the engine is ready to vomit out its thunders.

18. And when the sect of the tories beheld the wooden engine, their countenances fell; for they knew the force of the engines, and that they could not withstand their enemies if they shot at the house, therefore they delivered themselves to be captives, at the first summons.

19. And the soldiers, even the army of the people of the Provinces under *Nathaniel*, rejoiced, inasmuch as they judged it a sign of future success.

20. Now the number of men who followed after *Nathaniel*, were about two thousand, and they were in distress; for the men of Britain occupied the country round about, and *Nathaniel* knew not how he should continue to supply the army with food.

21. For the army of the people of the Provinces, had no money, except the money of the great Sanhedrim, which was made of filthy rags, and the husbandmen loathed to see it.

22. The gold and the silver, which the servants of the king had in abundance; this it was that allured them! for this they sold the choice lambs from the flock, the bullocks and the fatted calves from the stalls, the principal wheat and the fine flour; yea, they ventured their lives in pursuit thereof.

CHAP. LIV.

General Greene divides his force. The division under General Morgan goes to the Western extremity of South Carolina, defeats Tarleton at the Cowpens.

AND after these things it came to pass, that *Nathaniel* divided the host into two bands, one band was commanded by himself; and *Morgan*,* a valiant man from the Southern province, went before the other band; and they journeyed Westward.

2. And *Nathaniel*, with the residue of the host, also journeyed forwards until he came to the river, even the river Pedee, and he encamped on the North border thereof.

3. And *Morgan* and the men who were with him, arrived at the district of Ninety-six, where they pitched their tents.

4. And when it was told to *Cornwallis*, that the people of the Provinces had made an eruption in that quarter, he sent *Tarleton*, a man in whom he placed great confidence, to drive the people of the Provinces from thence.

5. And about eleven hundred of the choice warriors of Britain, followed after *Tarleton*, and two of the destroying engines were with them.

6. And the two armies came in sight of each other at the Cowpens, and they put the battle in array, army against army.

7. Now *Tarleton* despised all thoughts of delay, and the maxims of prudence he treated

* General Morgan.

with contempt; but rushed forwards as to an assured victory, and at the first onset drave his enemies before him, for they could not withstand the first charge.

8. But it came to pass, that two captains, * renowned for warlike atchievements, encouraged the men to turn about and face their enemies; and he who had taken the tories at the house, with the appearance of a wooden engine, this man turned the fortune of the day, by furiously charging a British captain, whose sur-name was *Ogilvie*, whom he caused to flee before him.

9. And about the same time, a valiant man † who was renowned in war, animated the men to turn about, who rushed upon the men of Britain and discomfited them.

10. So the warriors of Britain fled, even the horsemen thereof, and the destroying engines were taken; three hundred of the servants of the king were slain and wounded, and five hundred made captives, five score of warlike horses, carriages for the use of the host, one score and fifteen. These were all taken by the people of the Provinces, in the space of a few hours.

11. And the residue of the men of Britain who went out against *Morgan*, the captain, fled to *Cornwallis*, and reported all the news of the battle.

12. Then was *Cornwallis* exceeding wroth, inasmuch as he expected no such thing from a people whom he had despised, and had so lately vanquished.

13. Then he hastily collected his army toge-

* Colonels Pickens and Washington.

† Colonel Howard.

ther and went in pursuit of the people of the Provinces, under *Morgan*, for he hoped to regain the captives.

14. And when it was told *Nathaniel*, that the men of Britain were pursuing after the people, he left the place where he was encamped, and put the men of war under the guidance of a captain whose sur-name was *Huger*; but himself set out to join the army under the captain, *Morgan*.

15. And it was so, that the army of Britain hasted to pursue after the people of the Provinces, and so hot was the pursuit, that the men of Britain came to the borders of the river Catawba, on the evening of the same day that the people of the Provinces had crossed over.

16. Now it came to pass, that when it was night, there was a storm, and the rains descended in great abundance, and the river was increased to a mighty stream; and the men, even the army of the people of the Provinces, rejoiced, and considered the falling rain as the interposition of the Supreme Being.

17. And when the waters of the river were fallen, *Cornwallis* still continued to pursue after the people, and came to the river Yadkin, and at this place also he was fain to encamp, as the rain descended and swelled the river so that the army could not pass; howbeit, the host of Columbia had crossed the river, for it had not risen with the rain when they passed over.

18. Now while the men of Britain were detained on the other side of the river, lo! the two bands of the host were united; thus the people of the Provinces became one army, ar at

the first; howbeit they were not yet able to withstand the men of Britain.

19. Then the people of the Provinces who followed after *Nathaniel*, moved forwards and crossed over the river Dan into the province of Virginia, and the men of Britain followed hard after them.

20. And *Cornwallis*, the king's chief captain, encouraged the people of the province to come forth to the help of the king, and he caused the royal standard to be set up, that the people might flock to it, but they were weary.

21. He also sent *Tarleton*, in whom he greatly confided, to assemble the sect of the tories who dwelt on the borders of the Deep river.

22. And when *Nathaniel* heard thereof, he sent two chosen men, whose sur-names were *Pickens* and *Lee*, * in pursuit of *Tarleton*, and the men of Britain who were with him.

23. And it came to pass, as they were passing along, that they were met by about three hundred and fifty of the sect of the tories, and a man whose sur-name was *Pyles*, † went before them.

24. And the tories taking these men for servants of the king of Britain, saluted them as friends; but they were soon slain by the horsemen under *Lee* and *Pickens*, and there was a great discomfiture; and the tories were sore amazed, inasmuch as they regarded not their words, and slew them when they cried out, "God save the king." And when *Tarleton* heard thereof, he fled back again to the main

* General Pickens, and Col. Lee.

† Col. Pyles.

army, and on the way he slew several of the tories, whom he took to be friends to the great Sanhedrim.

CHAP. LV.

A reinforcement from Virginia, stimulates General Greene to make a stand against Cornwallis—Is defeated, and retires to Speedwell Iron works.

AND it came to pass, that four hundred men, whose hearts were warmed with the love of liberty, came from the province of Virginia, and from the adjoining province, even from North Carolina.

2. And they were led by two mighty men of valour: and also two whole brigades of militia. These came to the help of *Nathaniel*, against *Cornwallis* and the men of Britain.

3. Then *Nathaniel* gathered together his army, and it was gathered together; and they passed over the river, even the river Dan. Now the number of the men who went forth to fight with the men of Britain, were about four thousand four hundred; nevertheless, many of these were husbandmen, and were unacquainted with battles, and had never seen the strife of the warriors.

4. And *Cornwallis* rejoiced when he saw the people of the Provinces coming against him, for he trusted in the valiant men of Britain, and to his skill in battle. Now the number of the fighting men with *Cornwallis*, were two thousand four hundred; these were all men of valour and skilled in war.

5. And when they had put the battle in array, the men of Britain rushed forwards in three columns, and the foremost company * gave way; for it came to pass, that when the men of Britain were advancing, that a captain called out to another captain, saying: Take care lest the men of Britain surround thee!

6. And when the foremost company heard the words of the captain, they fainted in their minds and fled.

7. But all did not flee, as the first company did; but there were many that fought with the men of Britain, even the men from Virginia, a country renowned for hospitality; these stood their ground and behaved themselves valiantly; they were led by a man on whom fear made no impression, his sur-name was *Stephens*, † who, notwithstanding he was sore wounded, staid on the field of battle.

8. And the battle waxed hot, and continued for the space of one hour and thirty minutes, according to the great dial of Columbia, which is equal to the ancient dial of Ahaz, king of Israel.

9. Howbeit, the men of Britain gained the victory, but not without the loss of many valiant men who were slain in the battle; they had also to mourn for the loss of two valiant captains, ‡ moreover a chief captain § was wounded.

10. And there were slain and wounded of the people of the Provinces, about four hundred

* Front Line.

† General Stephens.

‡ Colonels Webster and Stuart.

§ General O'Harra.

persons, and a valiant captain was slain, whose sur-name was *Anderson.* *

11. And the servants of the king took from *Nathaniel*, four of the destroying engines.

12. And *Nathaniel* collected the remnant of the host, and fled to Speedwell, about eighty furlongs off, and there he pitched his tents.

13. Now *Cornwallis* boasted of the victory that he had gained, and sent forth a written paper, wherein he invited the inhabitants to join the servants of the king, promising pardon and favour to such as had revolted from the king, if they had made their submission before the twentieth day of the next month; being the fourth month, in the year of the Christian Hegira, one thousand seven hundred and eighty-one.

14. Notwithstanding *Cornwallis* and the men of Britain, had gotten the victory of *Nathaniel* and the people of the Provinces; yet he was not easy, but was troubled in his mind.

15. Now there was an officer, and a servant of the king of Britain, who sojourned in Wilmington, a town in the Northern province, even in Carolina; this man was to have supplied and assisted *Cornwallis* and the men of Britain, but the fear of the armed men of Columbia fell upon him, and prevented him.

16. So the army of Britain, were fain to depart, for they stood in need of those things that were at Wilmington: and the men of Britain journeyed forwards.

17. And when *Nathaniel* heard thereof, he gathered together the men of war, and pursued after the host of Britain, until they had arrived

* Major Anderson.

at Ramsay's mill on the Deep river, and there the people of the Provinces halted.

18. And when the people were refreshed, the army of Britain took their way across the country from Wilmington to Petersburg, in Virginia.

19. And *Nathaniel* believing it would be most expedient, and withal, greatly to the benefit of the people, to pass on directly for the Southern province; * therefore being fully persuaded in his own mind, he ordered the men of war to direct their course to that province.

20. Howbeit, he sent a captain † and horsemen to the chief captain *Marion*, whose camp was on the banks of the river Santee: and the horsemen took their way to the camp of *Marion*; howbeit, it was a difficult way, and the journey was long and perilous; notwithstanding, they arrived at the camp on the Santee, in the space of eight days, and reported the words of the chief captain to *Marion*.

21. Then *Nathaniel* departed from the Deep river, to go on his way to Camden in the Southern province.

22. And it was so, that while *Nathaniel* was going on his way to the Southern province, that *Marion* and *Lee* with their companies, besieged a strong hold, occupied by the men of Britain.

23. And they erected a bank against it, and shot at the men who were therein, so that they feared to shew their faces; for the men who were with *Marion* and *Lee* would shoot to a hair's breadth, they were chosen men of valour, and where the valiant were, there were they. And the men in the hold were taken captive.

* South Carolina.

† Colonel Lee.

CHAP. LVI.

General Greene, with the American Southern army, encamp within a mile of Camden. Lord Rawdon, with nine hundred men, are in Camden—They make a sally upon the American army, and gain the victory.

NOW it came to pass, that while *Cornwallis* was endeavouring to establish the king's friends and his laws, in the province of Virginia, that *Nathaniel* came with the host of the people of the Provinces, and encamped about eight furlongs from Camden.

2. And *Rawdon*, a lord of the realm of Britain, was in the town of Camden; and there were with him in the town, nine hundred of the choice warriors of Britain.

3. And there were with *Nathaniel*, about twelve hundred men; howbeit, three hundred of these were husbandmen, called militia.

4. And it was so, that as *Nathaniel* was waiting for the men of Britain to come out of the town, (for his fingers itched to be dealing with them) lo! according to his desire, a messenger came and said: Ye men of Columbia, arm yourselves, for your enemies are at hand!

5. Then the men of war made themselves ready, and *Nathaniel* animated with his voice the men of war.

6. And it came to pass, that the men of Britain came on like the young lions of the forest! they tarried not, but rushed into the battle, and there was a fierce encounter, and the servants of the king prevailed.

7. For when the armies joined battle, two companies of the people of the Provinces fled, and the residue were confused because of this thing, and they fled also.

8. Howbeit, *Nathaniel* suffered not his spirits to fail, but he collected together the residue of the host, and encamped about forty furlongs off.

9. And the men of Britain went back again into Camden. Now the people of the Provinces that fell in the battle, and were taken captive, were in number about two hundred and fifty persons.

10. Now *Nathaniel* caused eight men to be hanged up by the neck, because they had left the army; now these men were called deserters.

11. And *Rawdon*, the lord of the realm of Britain, not inclining to tarry any longer at Camden, he left it, and journeyed to the river Santee: howbeit he first burned the prison, the mill for grinding the corn, and a number of the houses in the town.

12. Now the enemies of the king of Britain, even the people of the Provinces, mightily increased in the Southern province; and they were fain to call in their men of war, who were in sundry strong holds in the province.

13. The hold, called by the people of the Provinces, Fort Mott, surrendered to the chief captain, *Sumpter*: next unto that, was Fort Granby; this was a strong hold, and defended by three hundred, two score and twelve men, who gave themselves up to be captives to the valiant captain, *Lee*; and there was also with the captain, a young man from the province of Jersey, his name was *James*, he was like the

wild colt of Arabia, and fear was a stranger to his heart.

14. Thus the men of Britain lost their posts and strong holds, in the space of a few days.

15. And there was another strong hold called Silver Bluff: and the garrison were taken captive by the young men who followed after the captain, *Lee*; howbeit, *Rudolph*, a man of valour, led forth the last company.

16. And there was yet another strong hold, * called by the name of the British captain, this also fell to the people of the Provinces, under the captains *Lee* and *Pickens*; and the captives that were taken, were in number three hundred men, chiefly of the sect of the tories.

17. Thus were the men of Britain driven from one place to another, until they came to the Eutaw Springs, where they halted; and *Nathaniel* and the army of Columbia, they also encamped near the men of Britain.

18. And *Nathaniel* numbered the men of Columbia, even the host of the people that followed after him, and the number of the men were two thousand fighting men.

19. And it came to pass, that as some of the young men went forth from the host, towards the army of Britain, they were met in the way by two companies of the men of Britain; and the din of Battle was heard!

20. The sound of the warriors reached the camp; the valiant rushed to the battle! The hosts were engaged, and fierce was the strife of the warriors!

21. The men of the provinces of Virginia and

* Fort Cornwallis.

Maryland, were foremost in the rough front of the battle; their captains, *Williams* and *Campbell*, led them to glory and victory! The renowned warriors of Britain fled, who were once so terrible in war!

22. Five hundred of the servants of the king, were taken captives; their bonds were made easy, for they were taken by a generous foe! But *Campbell* was slain! he died in the bed of honor, and his name shall not perish!

23. *Nathaniel* beheld with joy, the rising fame of Columbia; he pursued after the men of Britain, but he could not overtake the swiftfooted warriors of the king.

24. The slain and wounded, and the captives of the men of Britain, were in number, eleven hundred; and there fell in the battle, of the people of the Provinces, five hundred valiant men.

25. The way-faring man, as he passeth by the field where the valiant fought, will feel the rising sigh! The starting tear will come, when he remembers the friend of his early days, who fell in the battle!

26. The mother will often, with slow and sorrowful steps, visit the fatal spot! and mourn the loss of the beloved of her youth, the partner of her cares! The children will hear the sad tale, and their wrath will rise at the name of Britain! O Albion! surely thy wise men were infatuated, they shut their eyes to their true interest, and became fools!

CHAP. LVII.

Cornwallis is strengthened by the royal forces, under Phillips and Arnold—Traverses the country—Is feebly opposed by the Americans.

NOW *Cornwallis*, the king's chief captain in the Southern Provinces, was lifted up in his heart; for he had it in contemplation to subdue the whole land, and establish his name among st the sons of men, as a warrior of the first degree.

2. He sent forth the soldiers of Britain in troops, throughout the province of Virginia, who dispersed and put to flight the men of Columbia; for they were too few to stand before him.

3. For it came to pass, that *Benedict* and *Phillips*, with about fifteen hundred of the servants of the king, came in the tall ships of the Island of Britain, and strengthened his army.

4. Then was *Fayette*, the young nobleman from the kingdom of Gaul, sent by the great Sanhedrim, to oppose the men of Britain; and about three thousand of the men of Columbia, were with *Fayette*.

5. And *Cornwallis* led forth the valiant men of Britain, and journeyed from Petersburg to James' river; and when the men of war were all passed over the river, they journeyed through the county of Hanover, and came to the river Pamunky, so called by the Barbarians, the native inhabitants of the land.

6. Now the army of Columbia was too weak to fight with the servants of the king; never-

theless, they followed close after them, and watched their steps.

7. Now the princes * of the province, were met together about the affairs of the province; and *Cornwallis* sent *Tarleton* to the place where they were assembled together, even to Charlotteville.

8. And when the assembly of the princes heard thereof, they rose up and fled; howbeit, seven of them were taken captive.

9. And *Simcoe*, a chief servant of the king, and a captain in the host; he also was sent to destroy the stores, that were collected at a certain place, † but the people had removed them; nevertheless, the men of Britain destroyed the property of the inhabitants in those parts.

10. And *Fayette* gained the love of all the people; inasmuch, as his goings forth before the people, was with wisdom and prudence.

11. And it came to pass not long after, that the chief captain, *Wayne*, came to the help of *Fayette*; and there were with *Wayne*, the chief captain, eight hundred valiant men.

12. Now *Cornwallis* had gotten between the army of the people of the Provinces and their stores, and he deemed it a thing impossible, for the people who were with *Fayette* to get at the stores.

13. Howbeit, *Fayette*, when it was night, led his men by an unfrequented way, and gained the stores that were at Albemarle; and when *Cornwallis* heard thereof, he was astonished and sore troubled.

* Assembly.

† Point of Fork.

14. Then the men of Britain seeing their intentions were discovered, journeyed back again to Richmond.

15. And the army of the people of the Provinces, who were with *Fayette*, was again strengthened, by the warriors of the Baron *Steuben*: and *Fayette* drew forth the men of war, and magnified the number of the people who were with him.

16. And *Cornwallis* being told that the army of the people of the Provinces was strong, even a very great multitude, he fled to Williamsburg; where the rear of the host was assaulted by some of the warriors of Columbia, under a mighty man of valour, whose name was *Butler*. *

17. Now about this time, *Henry*, chief captain of all the armies of the king, in the land of Columbia, let in a fear that he was not safe in the city of York; inasmuch as he had heard, that it was in the heart of *George*, the chief captain, to come against the town; and that the servants of the king of Gaul, were to be joined with the host of the people of the Provinces, in assaulting the town.

18. And he sent messengers to *Cornwallis*, to advertise him of his danger, that he might send to the city of York, some of the valiant men who were with him.

19. And *Cornwallis*, deeming it expedient to obey the command of *Henry*, and considering that his army would be weakened thereby, he made ready to pass over the river to a more secure place, even to Portsmouth.

20. And it was so, that as the army of Bri-

* Col. Butler.

tain was preparing to pass over the river, that the chief captain, *Wayne*, was informed that the greater part of the army was passed over, he took with him the men whom he led forth to battle, who were eight hundred in number, that they might assault the rear of the host.

21. And lo! when he came to the river, *Cornwallis*, with a great part of the host were drawn up in battle array, to fight with him.

22. Then was *Wayne*, the chief captain, astonished: howbeit, he was a man that was not easily discomfited; he therefore fell upon the men of Britain, and when a convenient time was come, he led away his men from the field of battle.

23. And *Cornwallis* thinking that it was a snare to divert him from the purposes of his heart, he pursued not after the people of the Provinces, and they escaped.

24. Then the men of Britain passed over the river; and about this time, *Cornwallis* received a letter from *Henry*, and it was written in the letter, that *Cornwallis* might keep the soldiers he had with him, for the service of the king in those parts; and he was also advised in the letter, to occupy some convenient place, where the ships of the king, and the host of Britain might be secure.

25. And it was so, that after the chief men had consulted together; the town of York, and the Point of Gloucester were chosen, and there the host encamped; and they strengthened themselves there, and it became a place of defence.

CHAP. LVIII.

General Washington puts the American army in motion; and in conjunction with the French forces, marches to York-town. Count de Grasse arrives with the French fleet, at the Chesapeake. The British under Cornwallis, are closely invested, and finally capitulate.

NOW when *George*, the chief captain of all the armies of Columbia, was told that *Cornwallis* was strengthening himself in the town of York, in the province of Virginia; he gathered together all the valiant men, even a great multitude: and the servants of the king of Gaul were also gathered together, under *Rochambeau*, a chief captain of the king of Gaul.

2. And they journeyed along the high way of the country, and the husbandmen rejoiced, inasmuch as they were not spoiled by the armed men, in their passing along the way.

3. And the host of Columbia drew nigh unto the town, where the men of Britain were encamped, and they hastened, that they might come to the end of their journey; inasmuch, as they counted it a thing that was certain, that the men in the town would fall a prey to the people of the Provinces.

4. For it came to pass, that the strong armed ships of the king of Gaul, appeared in the mouth of the river; and the mariners cast forth the anchors, and the ships were fastened by strong cables, so that they were a lett to the ships of the king of Britain, that passed that way.

5. Now *Cornwallis* was ensnared, inasmuch as his enemies surrounded him on every side, and he was filled with indignation, because of

these things; yea, he was like the fierce lion, when he is pursued by the hunter: he shakes his mane in anger, his active powers are stimulated by fierce wrath! he foams at the mouth, and suddenly springs upon the daring foe!

6. Such was the wrath of *Cornwallis*, the chief captain; accustomed to victory, he scorned to be hemmed within the narrow enclosures of the town, but often broke forth upon the men of war, like a mighty torrent!

7. The destroying engines from the ramparts of the town, declared his displeasure! they cast out their thunders with ten-fold fury! the earth trembled at the sound thereof, and great was the astonishment of the neighbouring husbandmen.

8. Nevertheless, *George*, the chief captain, and the valiant men of Columbia, regarded them not; they were in one mind, and were not easily turned; they shot into the town, and brake down the walls thereof! the choice warriors of Britain were smitten to the earth! they were discomfited, for there was no hope!

9. They walked to and fro, as men who had lost their way in the desart! they started aside at the noise of the destroying engines! they gat into their close places of defence! they had no rest! The valiant men were dismayed! their sinews were relaxed, because of the destruction both within and without,

10. Now after the space of nine days, when the defenced places of the men of Britain were destroyed, by the destroying engines, and many of the men of war were deceased, and many of the chief warriors were slain; then it was, that *Cornwallis* endeavoured to escape from the town.

11. And he caused the boats to be in readiness, and when it was night, many of the armed men were put into the boats, and passed over the river.

12. But it came to pass, that a great storm arose and dispersed the boats, and frustrated the designs of the chief captain.

13. And when the morning of the next day appeared, the men who had passed over the river, returned back again to the town; then was *Cornwallis* discomfited, and his thoughts were troubled.

14. Howbeit, seeing no remedy, he sent a written letter to *George*, the chief captain, wherein he proposed that the destroying engines should cease to utter thunders, for the space of twenty-four hours.

15. And also, that suitable men, called Commissioners, should be appointed to settle the business of the siege, and write down the agreement between the two chief captains.

16. Then *George*, the chief captain, did as *Cornwallis* had desired him; he caused the destroying engines to cease from uttering their thunders, and silence pervaded the whole camp.

17. And on the nineteenth day of the tenth month, in the one thousand seven hundred and eighty-first year of the Christian Hegira, was the town given up to the people of the Provinces; and all the armed men were made captives, and the instruments of war, and the treasures of the king of Britain were taken.

18. Now when the report thereof, was spread abroad into all lands, it was cause of astonishment; inasmuch as it was a strange thing to hear of an army of the king of Britain, going

into captivity; furthermore, it was known that *Cornwallis* was a mighty man of valour, and the men of Britain who were with him, were all valiant men.

19. The sect of the tories, believed it not; they were confounded! they shut their ears at the report thereof: they said one to another, lo! now the sons of Belial, even the sect of the whigs, feigneth this thing out of their own mouths, that the king's friends may be discouraged.

CHAP. LIX.

The news of the capture of Cornwallis arrives in England—Debates in Parliament.

NOW when tidings came to the king of Britain, and the great council of the kingdom, that the Southern army was taken captive; they gazed upon each other as men who had lost their wits!

2. They essayed to speak, but their tongues clave to the roof of their mouths! they were silent through grief, for a season! Howbeit, their enemies caused them to speak, and there was a great wrath amongst the counsellors!

3. And one spake after this manner, and another after that manner, and there was great confusion amongst them! for they took it greatly to heart, that the fame of the warriors of Britain was fallen.

4. Now it came to pass, in the fourth month, in the next year after that *Cornwallis* was taken

captive; that there was a great battle on the waters of the mighty ocean, between the ships of the king of Britain; and the ships of the king of Gaul: on the twelfth day of the month was the battle fought.

5. And the navy of Britain triumphed over the ships of the king of Gaul, and there was a great slaughter; and *de Grasse*, the great sea-captain, was taken captive; and many of the ships of the king of Gaul, were destroyed by *Rodney*, chief captain of the navy of Britain.

6. Tremendous was the noise of the destroying engines, the sea-monsters fled at the report thereof! they hid themselves under the rocks! at the bottom of the mountains, they were gathered together! fear and amazement seized them, they trembled even in their ancient habitations!

7. Was man created for these things? Was it designed by the great Creator, that the noblest workmanship of his hands should destroy each other? Nay verily! Was it not rather his intention, that they should love as brethren, and be continually exercised in acts of benevolence and mercy? Were these virtues more generally cultivated in the hearts of the people, the whole creation would again enjoy its sabbath, and the earth would be replenished with joy and gladness.

CHAP. LX.

The Independence of the thirteen United States, acknowledged in Europe. Peace is declared.

NOW the nations and kings, who were warring together, grew weary thereof, and desired peace, inasmuch as the sword devoured many of their valiant men, and they were not a whit the better for it: what they gained in one place, they often lost as much in another.

2. Nevertheless, it went to the heart of the king of Britain, that he must lose his possessions in the land of Columbia; howbeit, there was no remedy, for his treasure was expended, and the people were weary of the war.

3. Then he consented that there should be peace, and that the people of the Provinces should be governed by their own People, independent of the kingdom of Britain; and he resigned unto them his power and kingly authority.

4. And the Provinces in the land of Columbia, were called by a new name, *, and they became one people, and the great Sanhedrim ruled over them.

5. And on the twentieth day of the second month, in the one thousand seven hundred and eighty-second year of the Christian Hegira, was peace proclaimed: and the men of Britain departed from the land of Columbia.

6. And each man of the host of the people of the Provinces, went to his own house; and there was joy and gladness throughout the whole land.

7. May it be a prelude to that peace, men-

* United States of North America.

tioned in the book of the Prophet Isaiah: "When the mountain of the Lord's house shall be established upon the tops of the mountains, and be exalted above the hills, and all nations shall flow unto it!

8. "And they shall beat their swords into plow-shares, and their spears into pruning-hooks! Nation shall not lift up sword against nation, neither shall they learn war any more!

9. "The wilderness and the solitary place shall be glad, and the desart shall rejoice, and blossom as the rose!"

10. The mind of the scribe, strongly impressed with this idea, and animated with the prospect of the dawning of that glorious morn, shall henceforth seek the shade of retirement, and repose himself under the canopy of peace, regardless of censure or praise; well knowing, that when a few more suns have rolled their cares away, he will be perfectly insensible both to the one and the other.

A

W
bec
pol
one
of t
whi
enti
of n
eau

W
all
dow
righ
the p
righ
deriv
the g
ment
the r
and t
found

DECLARATION

OF

INDEPENDENCE.

A Declaration by the Representatives of the United States of America, in Congress assembled, July 4, 1776.

WHEN, in the course of human events, it becomes necessary for one people to dissolve the political bands which have connected them with one another, and to assume among the powers of the earth, the separate and equal station, to which the laws of nature and of nature's God entitle them, a decent respect to the opinions of mankind requires that they should declare the causes which impel them to the separation.

We hold these truths to be self evident—that all men are created equal; that they are endowed by their Creator with certain unalienable rights; that among these are life, liberty and the pursuit of happines. That, to secure these rights, governments are instituted among men, deriving their just powers from the consent of the governed; that whenever any form of government becomes destructive of these ends, it is the right of the people to alter or abolish it, and to institute a new government, laying its foundation on such principles, and organizing

its powers in such form, as to them shall seem most likely to effect their safety and happiness. Prudence, indeed, will dictate, that governments long established should not be changed for light and transient causes; and accordingly all experience hath shewn, that mankind are more disposed to suffer, while evils are sufferable, than to right themselves by abolishing the forms to which they are accustomed. But when a long train of abuses and usurpations, pursuing invariably the same object, evinces a design to reduce them under absolute despotism, it is their right, it is their duty, to throw off such government, and to provide new guards for their future security. Such has been the patient sufferance of these colonies; and such is now the necessity which constrains them to alter their former systems of government. The history of the present king of Great Britain is a history of repeated injuries and usurpations, all having in direct object the establishment of an absolute tyranny over the states. To prove this, let facts be submitted to a candid world.

He has refused his assent to laws the most wholesome and necessary for the public good.

He has forbidden his governors to pass laws of immediate and pressing importance, unless suspended in their operation, till his assent should be obtained; and when so suspended, he has utterly neglected to attend to them.

He has refused to pass other laws, for the accommodation of large districts of people, unless those people would relinquish the right of representation in the legislature — a right inestimable to them, and formidable to tyrants only.

He has called together legislative bodies, at places unusual, uncomfortable, and distant from the depository of their public records, for the sole purpose of fatiguing them into compliance with his measures.

He has dissolved representative houses repeatedly for opposing with manly firmness, his invasions on the rights of the people.

He has refused, for a long time after such dissolutions, to cause others to be elected; whereby the legislative powers, incapable of annihilation, have returned to the people at large, for their exercise; the state remaining, in the mean time, exposed to all the danger of invasion from without, and convulsions within.

He has endeavored to prevent the population of those states; for that purpose obstructing the laws for naturalization of foreigners; refusing to pass others to encourage their migration hither, and raising the conditions of new appropriations of lands.

He has obstructed the administration of justice, by refusing his assent to laws, for establishing judiciary powers.

He has made judges dependent on his will alone, for the tenure of their offices, and the amount and payment of their salaries.

He has erected a multitude of new offices, and sent hither swarms of officers, to harrass our people, and eat out their substance.

He has kept among us, in times of peace, standing armies, without the consent of our legislatures.

He has affected to render the military independent of, and superior to, the civil power.

He has combined with others, to subject us

to a jurisdiction, foreign to our constitution, and unacknowledged by our laws; giving his assent to their acts of pretended legislation:

For quartering large bodies of armed troops among us:

For protecting them, by a mock trial, from punishment for any murders which they should commit on the inhabitants of these states:

For cutting off our trade with all parts of the world:

For imposing taxes on us without our consent:

For depriving us, in many cases, of the benefits of trial by jury:

For transporting us beyond seas, to be tried for pretended offences:

For abolishing the free system of English laws in a neighboring province, establishing therein an arbitrary government, and enlarging its boundaries, so as to render it at once an example and fit instrument for introducing the same absolute rule into these colonies:

For taking away our charters, abolishing our most valuable laws, and altering fundamentally the forms of our governments:

For suspending our own legislatures, and declaring themselves invested with power to legislate for us in all cases whatsoever.

He has abdicated government here, by declaring us out of his protection, and waging war against us.

He has plundered our seas, ravaged our coasts, burnt our towns, and destroyed the lives of our people.

He is, at this time, transporting large armies of foreign mercenaries, to complete the works of death, desolation and tyranny, already be-

gun, with circumstances of cruelty and perfidy, scarcely paralleled in the most barbarous ages, and totally unworthy the head of a civilized nation.

He has constrained our fellow-citizens, taken captive on the high seas, to bear arms against their country, to become the executioners of their friends and brethren, or fall themselves by their hands.

He has excited domestic insurrections amongst us, and has endeavored to bring on the inhabitants of our frontiers, the merciless indian savages, whose known rule of warfare is an undistinguished destruction of all ages, sexes and conditions.

In every stage of these oppressions, we have petitioned for redress, in the most humble terms; our repeated petitions have been answered only by repeated injury. A prince whose character is thus marked, by every act, which may define a tyrant, is unfit to be the ruler of a free people.

Nor have we been wanting in attention to our British brethren. We have warned them, from time to time, of attempts made by their legislature, to extend an unwarrantable jurisdiction over us. We have reminded them of the circumstances of our emigration and settlement here. We have appealed to their native justice and magnanimity, and we have conjured them, by the ties of our common kindred, to disavow these usurpations, which would inevitably interrupt our connections and correspondence. They, too, have been deaf to the voice of justice and of consanguinity. We must, therefore, acquiesce in the necessity, which denounces our

separation, and hold them, as we hold the rest of mankind—enemies in war—in peace, friends.

We, therefore, the representatives of the United States of America, in general congress assembled, appealing to the Supreme Judge of the world, for the rectitude of our intentions, Do, in the name, and by the authority, of the good people of those colonies, solemnly publish and declare, that these United Colonies are, and, of right, ought to be, free and independent states;—that they are absolved from all allegiance to the British crown, and that all political connection, between them and the state of Great Britain, is, and ought to be, totally dissolved; and that, as free and independent states, they have full power to levy war, conclude peace, contract alliances, establish commerce, and to do all other acts and things, which independent states may of right do And, for the support of this declaration, with a firm reliance on the protection of Divine Providence, we mutually pledge to each other, our lives, our fortunes, and our sacred honor.

Signed by order and in behalf of the congress,

JOHN HANCOCK,
President.

Attest,

CHARLES THOMPSON,
Secretary.

THE DECLARATION WAS ALSO SIGNED:

New-Hampshire.

Josiah Bartlett,
William Whipple,
Matthew Thornton.

Massachusetts Bay.

Samuel Adams,
John Adams,
Robert Treat Paine,
Elbridge Gerry.

Rhode-Island, &c.

Stephen Hopkins,
William Ellery.

Connecticut.

Roger Sherman,
Samuel Huntington,
William Williams,
Oliver Wolcott.

New-York.

William Floyd,
Philip Livingston,
Francis Lewis,
Lewis Morris.

New-Jersey.

Richard Stockton,
John Witherspoon,
Francis Hopkinson,
John Hart,
Abraham Clark.

Pennsylvania.

Robert Morris,
Benjamin Rush,
Benjamin Franklin,
John Moreton,
George Clymer,
James Smith,
George Taylor,
James Wilson,
George Ross.

Delaware.

Cæsar Rodney,
George Read.

Maryland.

Samuel Chase,
William Paca,
Thomas Stone,
Charles Carroll, of Carrollton.

Virginia.

George Wythe,
Richard Henry Lee,
Thomas Jefferson,
Benjamin Harrison,
Thomas Nelson, jun.
Fras. Lightfoot Lee,
Carter Braxton.

North Carolina.

William Hooper,

Joseph Hewes,
John Peen.

South Carolina.

Edward Rutledge,
Thos. Heyward, jun.
Thomas Lynch, jun.
Arthur Middleton.

Georgia.

Button Gwinnett,
Lyman Hall,
George Walton.

CONSTITUTION

OF THE

UNITED STATES.

The Constitution framed for the United States of America, by a Convention of Deputies from the states of New-Hampshire, Massachusetts, Connecticut, New-York, New-Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Maryland, Virginia, North-Carolina, South-Carolina and Georgia, at a session begun May 25, and ended September 17, 1787.

WE, the people of the United States, in order to form a more perfect union, establish justice, ensure domestic tranquility, provide for the common defence, promote the general welfare, and secure the blessings of liberty to ourselves and our posterity, do ordain aud establish this constitution for the United States of America.

ARTICLE I.—SECTION I.

All the legislative powers herein granted, shall be vested in a congress of the United States which shall consist of a senate and house of representatives.

SECTION II.

I. The house of representatives shall consist of members chosen every second year, by the

people of the several states: and the electors in each state, shall have the qualifications requisite for electors of the most numerous branch of the state legislature.

II. No person shall be a representative, who shall not have attained to the age of twenty-five years, and been seven years a citizen of the United States; and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that state in which he shall be chosen.

III. Representatives and direct taxes, shall be apportioned among the several states, which may be included within this union, according to their respective numbers, which shall be determined by adding to the whole number of free persons including those bound to service for a term of years, and excluding Indians not taxed, three fifths of all other persons. The actual enumeration shall be made within three years after the first meeting of the congress of the United States; and within every subsequent term of ten years, in such manner as they shall by law direct. The number of representatives shall not exceed one for every thirty thousand: but each state shall have at least one representative: and, until such enumeration shall be made, the state of New-Hampshire shall be entitled to choose three; Massachusetts eight; Rhode-Island and Providence plantations one; Connecticut five; New-York six; New-Jersey four; Pennsylvania eight; Delaware one; Maryland six; Virginia ten; North-Carolina five; South-Carolina five; and Georgia three.

IV. When vacancies happen in the representation from any state, the executive authority

thereof shall issue writs of election to fill such vacancies.

V. The house of representatives shall choose their speaker and other officers; and shall have the sole power of impeachment.

SECTION III.

I. The senate of the United States shall be composed of two senators from each state, chosen by the legislatures thereof, for six years; and each senator shall have one vote.

II. Immediately after they shall be assembled, in consequence of the first election they shall be divided, as equally as may be, into three classes. The seats of the senators of the first class shall be vacated at the expiration of the second year; of the second class, at the expiration of the fourth year; and of the third class, at the expiration of the sixth year: so that one third may be chosen every second year. And if vacancies happen, by resignation or otherwise, during the recess of the legislature of any state, the executive thereof may make temporary appointments, until the next meeting of the legislature, which shall then fill such vacancies.

III. No person shall be a senator, unless he shall have attained to the age of thirty years, and been nine years a citizen of the United States; and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that state for which he shall be chosen.

IV. The vice-president of the United States shall be president of the senate, but shall have no vote unless they be equally divided.

V. The senate shall choose their other officers, and also a president pro tempore in the absence

of the vice-president, or when he shall exercise the office of president of the United States.

VI. The senate shall have the sole power to try all impeachments. When sitting for that purpose, they shall be on oath or affirmation. When the president of the United States is tried, the chief justice shall preside: and no person shall be convicted, without the concurrence of two-thirds of the members present.

VII. Judgment, in cases of impeachment, shall not extend further than the removal from office, and disqualification to hold and enjoy any office of honor, trust, or profit, under the United States. But the party convicted shall, nevertheless, be liable and subject to indictment, trial, judgment, and punishment according to law.

SECTION IV.

I. The times, places, and manners, of holding elections for senators and representatives, shall be prescribed in each state by the legislature thereof: but the congress may, at any time, by law make or alter such regulations, except as to the places of choosing senators.

II. The congress shall assemble at least once in every year; and such meeting shall be on the first Monday in December, unless they shall by law appoint a different day.

SECTION V.

I. Each house shall be the judge of the elections, returns and qualifications of its own members; and a majority of each shall constitute a quorum to do business; but a smaller number may adjourn from day to day, and may be au-

thorised to compel the attendance of absent members, in such manner, and under such penalties as each house may provide.

II. Each house may determine the rules of its proceedings; punish its members for disorderly behavior; and with the concurrence of two thirds, expel a member.

III. Each house shall keep a journal of its proceedings, and from time to time, publish the same, excepting such parts as may in their judgment require secrecy: and the yeas and nays, of the members of either house, on any question, shall, at the desire of one fifth of those present, be entered on the journal.

IV. Neither house during the session of congress, shall, without the consent of the other, adjourn for more than three days, nor to any other place than that in which the two houses shall be sitting.

SECTION VI.

I. The senators and representatives shall receive a compensation for their services, to be ascertained by law, and paid out of the treasury of the United States. They shall, in all cases, except treason, felony, and breach of the peace, be privileged from arrest, during their attendance at the session of their respective houses, and in going to, and returning from the same: for any speech or debate in either house, they shall not be questioned in any other place.

II. No senator or representative shall, during the time for which he was elected, be appointed to any civil office, under the authority of the United States, which shall have been created,

or the emoluments of which shall have been increased, during such time; and no person holding any office under the United States, shall be a member of either house, during his continuance in office.

SECTION VII.

I. All bills, for raising revenue, shall originate in the house of representatives: but the senate shall propose or concur with amendments, as on other bills.

II. Every bill, which shall have passed the house of representatives and the senate, shall, before it become a law, be presented to the president of the United States. If he approve, he shall sign it; but if not, he shall return it, with his objections, to that house in which it shall have originated, who shall enter the objections at large on their journal, and proceed to re-consider it. If, after such re-consideration, two thirds of that house shall agree to pass the bill, it shall be sent, together with the objections, to the other house, by which it shall likewise be re-considered, and if approved by two thirds of that house, it shall become a law. But in all such cases the votes of both houses shall be determined by yeas and nays, and the names of the persons voting for and against the bill shall be entered on the journal of each house respectively. If any bill shall not be returned by the president within ten days, Sundays excepted, after it shall have been presented to him, the same shall be a law, in like manner as if he had signed it, unless the congress, by their adjournment, prevent its return, in which case it shall not be a law.

III. Every order, resolution, or vote, to which the concurrence of the senate and house of representatives may be necessary (except on a question of adjournment) shall be presented to the president of the United States; and before the same shall take effect, shall be approved by him, or, being disapproved by him, shall be repassed by two thirds of the senate and house of representatives, according to the rules and limitations prescribed in the case of a bill.

SECTION VIII.

The congress shall have power—

I. To lay and collect taxes, duties, imposts, and excises, to pay the debts and provide for the common defence, and general welfare of the United States: but all duties, imposts, and excises, shall be uniform throughout the United States.

II. To borrow money on the credit of the United States.

III. To regulate commerce with foreign nations, and among the several states, and with the Indian tribes.

IV. To establish a uniform rule of naturalization: and uniform laws on the subject of bankruptcies, throughout the United States.

V. To coin money; to regulate the value thereof, and of foreign coin; and fix the standard of weights and measures.

VI. To provide for the punishment of counterfeiting the securities and current coin of the United States.

VII. To establish post-offices and post roads.

VIII. To promote the progress of science and useful arts, by securing for limited times, to

authors and inventors, the exclusive right to their respective writings and discoveries.

IX. To constitute tribunals inferior to the supreme court.

X. To define and punish piracies and felonies committed on the high seas, and offences against the law of nations.

XI. To declare war; grant letters of marque and reprisal; and make rules concerning captures on land and water.

XII. To raise and support armies. But no appropriation of money for that use, shall be for a longer term than two years.

XIII. To provide and maintain a navy.

XIV. To make rules for the government and regulation of the land and naval forces.

XV. To provide for calling forth the militia to execute the laws of the union, suppress insurrections, and repel invasions.

XVI. To provide for organizing, arming, and disciplining the militia, and for governing such part of them as may be employed in the service of the United States; reserving to the states respectively the appointment of the officers, and the authority of training the militia according to the discipline prescribed by congress.

XVII. To exercise exclusive legislation, in all cases whatsoever, over such district (not exceeding ten miles square) as may, by cession of particular states, and the acceptance of congress, become the seat of the government of the United States; and to exercise like authority over all places purchased by the consent of the legislature of the state in which the same shall be, for the erection of forts, magazines, arse-

nals, dock-yards, and other needful buildings; and

XVIII. To make all laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into execution the foregoing powers, and all other powers vested by this constitution in the government of the United States, or any department or officer thereof.

SECTION IX.

I. The migration of or importation of such persons, as any of the states now existing shall think proper to admit, shall not be prohibited by the congress, prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight; but a tax may be imposed upon such importation, not exceeding ten dollars for each person.

II. The privilege of the writ of habeas corpus shall not be suspended, unless when in cases of rebellion or invasion, the public safety may require it.

III. No bill of attainder or ex post facto law shall be passed.

IV. No capitation or other direct tax shall be laid, unless in proportion to the census or enumeration herein before directed to be taken.

V. No tax or duties shall be laid on articles exported from any state. No preference shall be given, by any regulation of commerce or revenue, to the ports of one state, over those of another: nor shall vessels, bound to or from one state, be obliged to enter, clear, or pay duties in another.

VI. No money shall be drawn from the treasury, but in consequence of appropriations made by law; and a regular statement and account of

the receipts and expenditures of all public money shall be published from time to time.

VII. No title of nobility shall be granted by the United States: and no person, holding any office of profit or trust under them, shall, without the consent of congress, accept of any present, emolument, office or title, of any kind whatever, from any king, prince, or foreign state.

SECTION X.

I. No state shall enter into any treaty, alliance, or confederation: grant letters of marque and reprisal: coin money; emit bills of credit; make any thing but gold and silver coin a tender in payment of debts; pass any bill of attainder, ex post facto law, or laws impairing the obligation of contracts, or grant any title of nobility.

II. No state shall, without the consent of congress, lay any imposts or duties on imports or exports, except what may be absolutely necessary for executing its inspection laws; and the net produce of all duties and imports, shall be for the use of the treasury of the United States; and all such laws shall be subject to the revision and control of congress. No state shall, without the consent of congress, lay any duty on tonnage, keep troops, or ships of war in time of peace, enter into any agreement or compact with another state, or with a foreign power, or engage in war, unless actually invaded, or in such imminent danger as will not admit of delay.

ARTICLE II.—SECTION I.

I. The executive power shall be vested in a president of the United States of America. He shall hold his office during the term of four years, and, together with the vice-president, chosen for the same term, be elected as follows.

II. Each state shall appoint, in such manner as the legislature thereof may direct, a number of electors, equal to the whole number of senators and representatives, to which the state may be entitled in the congress. But no senator or representative, or person holding any office of trust or profit under the United States, shall be appointed an elector.

III. The electors shall meet in their respective states, and vote by ballot for two persons, one of whom at least, shall not be an inhabitant of the same state with themselves. And they shall make a list of all the persons voted for, and of the number of votes for each; which list they shall sign and certify, and transmit, sealed, to the seat of the government of the United States, directed to the president of the senate. The president of the senate shall, in the presence of the senate and house of representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted. The person having the greatest number of votes shall be the president, if such number of votes be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if there be more than one who have such majority, and have an equal number of votes, then the house of representatives shall immediately choose by ballot one of them for president: and if no person have a majority, then, from the five highest on the list

the said house shall in like manner choose the president. But in choosing the president, the votes shall be taken by states, the representation from each state having one vote: a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the states; and a majority of all the states shall be necessary to a choice. In every case, after the choice of the president, the person having the greatest number of votes of the electors, shall be the vice-president. But if there should remain two or more who have equal votes, the senate shall choose from them by ballot the vice-president.

IV. The congress may determine the time of choosing the electors, and the day on which they shall give their votes; which day shall be the same throughout the United States.

V. No person, except a natural-born citizen, or a citizen of the United States at the time of the adoption of this constitution, shall be eligible to the office of president; neither shall any person be eligible to that office who shall not have attained to the age of thirty-five years, and been fourteen years a resident within the United States.

VI. In case of the removal of the president from office, or of his death, resignation, or inability to discharge the powers, and duties of the said office, the same shall devolve on the vice-president; and the congress may, by law, provide for the case of removal, death, or inability both of the president and vice-president, declaring what officer shall then act as president: and such officer shall act accordingly, until the disability be removed, or a president shall be elected.

VII. The president shall, at stated times, receive for his services, a compensation which shall neither be increased nor diminished during the period for which he shall have been elected: and he shall not receive, within that period, any other emolument from the United States, or any of them.

VIII. Before he enter on the execution of his office, he shall take the following oath or affirmation:

"I do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will faithfully execute the office of president of the United States; and will, to the best of my ability, preserve, protect, and defend the constitution of the United States."

SECTION II.

I. The president shall be commander in chief of the army and navy of the United States, and of the militia of the several states, when called into the actual service of the United States. He may require the opinion in writing of the principal officers in each of the executive departments, upon any subject relating to the duties of their respective offices; and he shall have power to grant reprieves and pardons, for offences against the United States, except in cases of impeachment.

II. He shall have power, by and with the advice and consent of the senate, to make treaties, provided two-thirds of the senators present concur: and he shall nominate, and by and with the advice and consent of the senate, shall appoint ambassadors, other public ministers, and consuls, judges of the supreme court, and all other

officers of the United States, whose appointments are not herein otherwise provided for, and which shall be established by law. But the congress may, by law, vest the appointment of such inferior officers as they think proper in the president alone, in the courts of law, or in the heads of departments.

III. The president shall have power to fill up all vacancies that may happen during the recess of the senate, by granting commissions which shall expire at the end of their next session.

SECTION III.

He shall from time to time give to the congress information of the state of the Union; and recommend to their consideration such measures as he shall judge necessary and expedient. He may, on extraordinary occasions, convene both houses or either of them; and, in case of disagreement between them, with respect to the time of adjournment, he may adjourn them to such time as he shall think proper. He shall receive ambassadors and other public ministers. He shall take care that the laws be faithfully executed; and shall commission all the officers of the United States.

SECTION IV.

The president, vice-president, and all civil officers of the United States shall be removed from office on impeachment for, and conviction of treason, bribery, or other high crimes and misdemeanors.

ARTICLE II.—SECTION I.

The judicial power of the United States shall be vested in one supreme court, and in such inferior courts, as the congress may from time to time ordain and establish. The judges, both of the supreme and inferior courts, shall hold their offices during good behavior, and shall, at stated times, receive for their services, a compensation, which shall not be diminished during their continuance in office.

SECTION II.

I. The judicial power shall extend to all cases, in law and equity, arising under this constitution, the laws of the United States, and treaties made, or which shall be made, under their authority; to all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers, and consuls; to all cases of admiralty and maritime jurisdiction: to controversies to which the United States shall be a party; to controversies between two or more states, between a state and citizens of another state, between citizens of different states, between citizens of the same state claiming lands under grants of different states, and between a state, or the citizens thereof, and foreign states, citizens, or subjects.

II. In all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers, and consuls, and those in which a state shall be party, the supreme court shall have original jurisdiction. In all the other cases before mentioned, the supreme court shall have appellate jurisdiction, both as to law and fact, with such exceptions, and under such regulations as the congress shall make.

III. The trial of all crimes, except in cases of impeachment, shall be by jury; and such trial shall be held in the state where the said crime shall have been committed; but when not committed within any state, the trial shall be at such place or places as the congress may by law have directed.

SECTION III.

I. Treason against the United States shall consist only in levying war against them, or in adhering to their enemies, giving them aid and comfort. No person shall be convicted of treason, unless on the testimony of two witnesses to the same overt act, or on confession in open court.

II. The congress shall have power to declare the punishment of treason, but no attainder of treason shall work corruption of blood, or forfeiture, except during the life of the person attainted.

ARTICLE IV.—SECTION I.

Full faith and credit shall be given in each state to the public acts, records and judicial proceedings of every other state. And the congress may by general laws prescribe the manner in which such acts, records and proceedings shall be proved, and the effect thereof.

SECTION II.

I. The citizens of each state shall be entitled to all privileges and immunities of citizens in the several states.

II. A person charged in any state with treason, felony, or other crime, who shall flee from

justice, and be found in another state, shall, on demand of the executive authority of the state from which he fled, be delivered up, to be removed to the state having jurisdiction of the crime.

III. No person held to service or labor in one state, under the laws thereof, escaping into another, shall, in consequence of any law or regulation therein, be discharged from such service or labor, but shall be delivered up on claim of the party to whom such service or labor may be due.

SECTION III.

I. New states may be admitted by the congress into this union, but no new state shall be formed or erected within the jusisdiction of any other state; nor any state be formed by the junction of two or more states, without the consent of the legislatures of the states concerned as well as of the congress.

II. The congress shall have power to dispose of and make all needful rules and regulations respecting the territory or other property belonging to the United States; and nothing in this constitution shall be so construed as to prejudice any claims of the United States, or of any particular state.

SECTION IV.

The United States shall guarantee to every state in this union a republican form of government, and shall protect each of them against invasion; and on application of the legislature, or

of the executive, when the legislature cannot be convened, against domestic violence.

ARTICLE V.

The congress, whenever two thirds of both houses shall deem it necessary, shall propose amendments to this constitution, or, on the application of the legislatures of two thirds of the several states, shall call a convention for proposing amendments; which, in either case, shall be valid to all intents and purposes, as part of this constitution, when ratified by the legislatures of three fourths of the several states, or by conventions in three fourths thereof, as the one or the other mode of ratification may be proposed by the congress: Provided that no amendment which may be made prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight, shall in any manner affect the first and fourth clauses in the ninth section of the first article; and that no state, without its consent, shall be deprived of its equal suffrage in the senate.

ARTICLE VI.

I. All debts contracted, and engagements entered into before the adoption of the constitution, shall be as valid against the United States under this constitution, as under the confederation.

II. This constitution, and the laws of the United States, which shall be made in pursuance thereof; and all treaties made, or which shall be made, under the authority of the United States, shall be the supreme law of the land; and the judges in every state shall be bound thereby, any thing in the constitution or laws of any state to the contrary notwithstanding.

III. The senators and representatives before mentioned, and the members of the several state legislatures, and all executive and judicial officers, both of the United States and of the several states, shall be bound by oath or affirmation to support this constitution; but no religious test shall ever be required as a qualification to any office or public trust under the United States.

ARTICLE VII.

The ratification of the conventions of nine states shall be sufficient for the establishment of this constitution, between the states so ratifying the same.

Done in convention, by the unanimous consent of the states present, the seventeenth day of September, in the year of our Lord one thousand seven hundred and eighty-seven, and of the independence of the United States of America the twelfth. In witness whereof, we have hereunto subscribed our names.

GEORGE WASHINGTON, President, and delegate from Virginia.

New-Hampshire.
John Langdon,
Nicholas Gilman.

Massachusetts.
Nathaniel Gorham,
Rufus King.

Connecticut.
Wm. Samuel Johnson,
Roger Sherman.

New-York.
Alexander Hamilton.

New-Jersey.
William Livingston,
David Brearley,
William Patterson,
Jonathan Dayton.

Pennsylvania.
Benjamin Franklin,

Thomas Mifflin,
Robert Morris,
George Clymer,
Thomas Fitzsimons,
Jared Ingersoll,
James Wilson,
Governeur Morris.

Delaware.

George Reed,
Gunning Bedford, jun.
John Dickinson,
Richard Basset,
Jacob Broom.

Maryland.

James M'Henry,
Daniel of St. Thomas Jenifer,
Daniel Carroll.

Virginia.

John Blair,
James Madison, jun.

North-Carolina.

William Blount,
Richard D. Spaight,
Hugh Williamson.

South-Carolina.

John Rutledge,
Charles C. Pinckney,
Charles Pinckney,
Pierce Butler.

Georgia.

William Few,
Abraham Baldwin.

Attest,

WILLIAM JACKSON, Secretary.

AMENDMENTS.

The following articles in addition to, and amendment of, the constitution of the United States. having been ratified by the legislatures of nine states, are equally obligatory with the constitution itself.

I. Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof, or abridging the freedom of speech, or the press; or the right of the people peaceably to assemble, and to petition the government for a redress of grievances.

II. A well regulated militia being necessary to the security of a free state, the right of the people to keep and bear arms shall not be infringed.

III. No soldier shall, in time of peace, be quartered in any house without the consent of the owner; nor in any time of war, but in a manner to be prescribed by law.

IV. The right of the people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers and effects, against unreasonable searches and seizures, shall not be violated; and no warrants shall issue, but upon probable cause, supported by oath or affirmation, and particularly describing the place to be searched, and the persons or things to be seized.

V. No person shall be held to answer for a capital or otherwise infamous crime, unless on a presentment or indictment of a grand jury, excepting cases arising in the land or naval forces or in the militia, when in actual service,

in time of war, or public danger; nor shall any person be subject, for the same offence, to be twice put in jeopardy of life or limb; nor shall be compelled in any criminal case, to be witness against himself; nor be deprived of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law; nor shall private property be taken for public use, without just compensation.

VI. In all criminal prosecutions, the accused shall enjoy the right to a speedy and public trial, by an impartial jury, of the state and district wherein the crime shall have been committed; which district shall have been previously ascertained by law; and to be informed of the nature and cause of the accusation; to be confronted with the witnesses against him; to have compulsory process for obtaining witnesses in his favor; and to have the assistance of counsel for his defence.

VII. In suits at common law, where the value in controversy shall exceed twenty dollars, the right of trial by jury shall be preserved; and no fact tried by jury shall be otherwise re-examined in any court of the United States, than according to the rules of the common law.

VIII. Excessive bail shall not be required; nor excessive fines imposed; nor cruel and unusual punishment inflicted.

IX. The enumeration, in the constitution, of certain rights shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people.

X. The powers not delegated to the United States by the constitution, nor prohibited by it to the states, are reserved to the states respectively, or to the people.

XI. The judicial power of the United States

shall not be construed to extend to any suit in law or equity, commenced or prosecuted against one of the United States by citizens of another state, or by citizens or subjects of any foreign state.

XII. The electors shall meet in their respective states, and vote by ballot for president and vice-president, one of whom, at least shall not be an inhabitant of the same state with themselves; they shall name in their ballots the person voted for as president, and in distinct ballots the person voted for as vice-president; and they shall make distinct lists of all persons voted for as president, and of all persons voted for as vice-president, and of the number of votes for each, which lists they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the government of the United States, directed to the president of the senate; the president of the senate shall, in the presence of the senate and house of representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted: the person having the greatest number of votes for president shall be the president, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if no person have such majority, then from the persons having the highest numbers not exceeding three on the list of those voted for as president, the house of representatives shall choose immediately, by ballot, the president. But in choosing the president, the votes shall be taken by states, the representation from each state having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the states, and a majority of all the states shall be necessary to a choice. And

if the house of representatives shall not choose a president whenever the right of choice shall devolve upon them, before the fourth day of March next following, then the vice-president shall act as president, as in the case of the death or other constitutional disability of the president.

The person having the greatest number of votes as vice-president, shall be vice-president, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if no person have a majority, then from the two highest numbers on the list, the senate shall choose the vice-president: a quorum for the purpose shall consist of two-thirds of the whole number of senators, and a majority of the whole number shall be necessary to a choice.

But no person constitutionally ineligible to the office of president shall be eligible to that of vice-president of the United States.

FAREWELL ADDRESS,

OF

WASHINGTON,

TO THE PEOPLE

OF THE

UNITED STATES.

Friends and Fellow Citizens,

THE period for the new election of a citizen, to administer the Executive Government of the United States being not far distant, and the time actually arrived, when your thoughts must be employed in designating the person who is to be clothed with that important trust, it appears to me proper, especially as it may conduce to a more distinct expression of the public voice, that I should now apprize you of the resolution I have formed, to decline being considered among the number of those out of whom a choice is to be made.

I beg you, at the same time, to do me the justice to be assured, that this resolution has not been taken without a strict regard to all the considerations appertaining to the relation which binds a dutiful citizen to his country; and that, in withdrawing the tender of service, which silence in my situation might imply, I am in-

fluenced by no diminution of zeal for your future interests, no deficiency of grateful respect for your past kindness; but am supported with a full conviction, that the step is compatible with both.

The acceptance of, and continuance hitherto in, the office to which your suffrages have twice called me, have been an uniform sacrifice of inclination to the opinion of duty, and to a deference to what appeared to be your desire. I constantly hoped, that it would have been much earlier in my power, consistently with motives which I was not at liberty to disregard, to return to that retirement from which I had been reluctantly drawn. The strength of my inclination to do this, previous to the last election, had even led to the preparation of an address to declare it to you, but mature reflection of the then perplexed and critical posture of our affairs with foreign nations, and the unanimous advice of persons entitled to my confidence, impelled me to abandon the idea.

I rejoice that the state of your concerns, external as well as internal, no longer renders the pursuit of inclination incompatible with the sentiment of duty or propriety; and am persuaded, whatever partiality may be retained for my services, that in the present circumstances of our country, you will not disapprove my determination to retire.

The impressions with which I first undertook the arduous trust, were explained on the proper occasion. In the discharge of this trust, I will only say, that I have, with good intentions, contributed towards the organization and administration of the Government, the best exertions

of which a very fallible judgment was capable.—Not unconscious, in the outset, of the inferiority of my qualifications, experience, in my own eyes, perhaps still more in the eyes of others, has strengthened the motives to diffidence of myself; and every day the increasing weight of years admonishes me more and more that the shade of retirement is as necessary to me as it will be welcome. Satisfied that if any circumstances have given peculiar value to my services, they were temporary, I have the consolation to believe, that while choice and prudence invite me to quit the scene, patriotism does not forbid it.

In looking forward to the moment which is intended to terminate the career of my public life, my feelings do not permit me to suspend the deep acknowledgment of that debt of gratitude which I owe to my beloved country, for the many honours it has conferred upon me, or still more for the steadfast confidence with which it has supported me; and for the opportunities I have thence enjoyed of manifesting my inviolable attachment, by services useful and persevering, though in usefulness, unequal to my zeal. If benefits have resulted to our country from these services, let it always be remembered to your praise, and as an instructive example in our annals, that under circumstances in which the passions, agitated in every direction, were most liable to mislead, amidst appearance sometimes dubious, vicissitudes of fortune often discouraging, in situations in which not unfrequently want of success has countenanced the spirit of criticism, the constancy of your support was the essential prop of the efforts, and a guarantee

of the plans by which they were effected. Profoundly penetrated with this idea, I shall carry it with me to my grave, as a strong incitement to unceasing vows, that Heaven may continue to you the choicest tokens of its beneficence—that your union and brotherly affection may be perpetual—that the free Constitution, which is the work of your hands, may be sacredly maintained—that its administration in every department may be stamped with wisdom and virtue—that, in fine, the happiness of these States, under the auspices of Liberty, may be made complete, by so careful a preservation and so prudent a use of this blessing as will acquire to them the glory of recommending it to the applause, the affection and adoption of every nation which is yet a stranger to it.

Here, perhaps, I ought to stop. But solicitude for your welfare which cannot end but with my life, and the apprehension of danger, natural to such solicitude, urge me on an occasion like the present to offer to your solemn contemplation, and to recommend to your frequent review, some sentiments, which are the result of much reflection, of no inconsiderable observation, and which appear to me all important to your felicity as a people. These will be offered to you with the more freedom, as you can only see in them the disinterested warnings of a parting friend, who can possibly have no personal motive to bias his counsel. Nor can I forget, as an encouragement to it, your indulgent reception of my sentiments on a former and not dissimilar occasion.

Interwoven as is the love of liberty with every ligament of your hearts, no recommendation of

mine is necessary to fortify or confirm the attachment.

The unity of government which constitutes you one people is also now dear to you. It is justly so; for it is a main pillar in the edifice of your real independence, the support of your tranquillity at home, and your peace abroad; of your safety, of your prosperity, of that very liberty which you so highly prize. But as it is easy to foresee, that from different causes and from different quarters much pains will be taken, many artifices employed, to weaken in your minds the conviction of this truth, (as this is the point in your political fortress, against which the batteries of internal and external enemies will be most constantly and actively, though often covertly and insiduously, directed,) it is of infinite moment that you should properly estimate the immense value of your national union to your collective and individual happiness; that you should cherish a cordial, habitual, and immoveable attachment to it, accustoming yourselves to think and speak of it as of the palladium of your political safety and prosperity; watching for its preservation with jealous anxiety; discountenancing whatever may suggest even a suspicion that it can in any event be abandoned; and indignantly frowning upon every attempt to alienate any portion of our country from the rest, or to enfeeble the sacred ties which now link together the various parts.

For this you have every inducement of sympathy and interest. Citizens by birth or choice of a common country, that country has a right to concentrate your affections. The name of

American, which belongs to you in your national capacity, must always exalt the just pride of patriotism more than any appellation derived from local derivations. With light shades of difference, you have the same religion, manners, habits, and political principles. You have, in a common cause, fought and triumphed together; the independence and liberty you possess are the work of your councils and joint efforts, of common dangers, sufferings, and successes.

But these considerations, however powerfully they address themselves to your sensibility, are greatly outweighed by those which apply more immediately to your interest. Here every portion of our country finds the most commanding motives for carefully guarding and preserving the union of the whole.

The *North*, in an unrestrained intercourse with the *South*, protected by the equal laws of a common government, finds in the productions of the latter great additional resources of maritime and commercial enterprises, and precious materials of manufacturing industry. The *South*, in the same intercourse, benefiting by the agency of the *North*, sees its agriculture grow, and its commerce expand. Turning partly into its own channels the seamen of the *North*, it finds its particular navigation invigorated; and while it contributes in different ways to nourish and increase the general mass of the national navigation, it looks forward to the protection of a maritime strength, to which itself is unequally adapted. The *East* in a like intercourse with the *West*, already finds, and in the progressive improvement of interiour communication by land and water, will more and more find a valuable

vent for the commodities which it brings from abroad, or manufactures at home. The *West* derives from the *East* supplies requisite to its growth and comfort—and what is, perhaps, of still greater consequence, it must of necessity owe the *secure* enjoyment of indispensable *outlets* for its own productions to the weight, influence, and the future maritime strength of the Atlantic side of the Union, directed by an indissoluble community of interest as *one nation*. Any other tenure by which the *West* can hold these essential advantages, whether derived from its own separate strength, or from an apostate and unnatural connexion with any foreign power, must be intrinsically precarious.

While, then, every part of our country thus feels an immediate and particular interest in Union, all the parts combined cannot fail to find in the united mass of means and efforts, greater strength, greater resource, proportionably greater security from external danger, a less frequent interruption of their peace by foreign nations, and, what is of inestimable value, they must derive from Union an exemption from those broils and wars among themselves, which so frequently afflict neighbouring countries, not tied together by the same government; which their own rivalships alone would be sufficient to produce, but which opposite foreign alliances, attachments, and intrigues, would stimulate and embitter.—Hence likewise they avoid the necessity of those overgrown military establishments, which under any form of government are inauspicious to liberty, and which are to be regarded as particularly hostile to Republican liberty; in this sense it is that your Union ought to be con-

sidered as a main prop of your liberty, and that the love of the one ought to endear to you the preservation of the other.

These considerations speak a persuasive language to every reflecting and virtuous mind, and exhibit the continuance of the Union as a primary object of patriotic desire.—Is there a doubt whether a common government can embrace so large a system?—Let experience solve it. To listen to mere speculations in such a case were criminal. We are authorised to hope that a proper organization of the whole, with the auxiliary agency of government for the respective subdivisions, will afford a happy issue to the experiment. 'Tis well worth a fair and full experiment. With such powerful and obvious motives to Union, affecting all parts of our country, while experience shall not have demonstrated its impracticability, there will always be reason to distrust the patriotism of those who in any quarter may endeavour to weaken its bands.

In contemplating the causes which may disturb our Union, it occurs as matter of very serious concern, that any ground should have been furnished for characterising parties by geographical discriminations—*Northern* and *Southern*—*Atlantic* and *Western*; whence designing men may endeavour to excite a belief that there is a real difference of local interests and views. One of the expedients of party to acquire influence within particular districts, is to misrepresent the opinions and aims of other districts. You cannot shield yourselves too much against the jealousies & heart-burnings which spring from these misrepresentations; they tend to render alien to each other those who ought to be bound to-

gether by fraternal affection. The inhabitants of our western country have lately had a useful lesson on this head; they have seen, in the negociation by the Executive, and in the unanimous ratification by the Senate, of the treaty with Spain, and in the universal satisfaction at the event throughout the United States, a decisive proof how unfounded were the suspicions propagated among them, of a policy in the General Government, and in the Atlantic States, unfriendly to their interests in regard to the Mississippi: they have been witness to the formation of two treaties, that with Great Britain and that with Spain, which secure to them every thing they could desire, in respect to our foreign relations, towards confirming their prosperity. Will it not be their wisdom to rely for the preservation of these advantages on the Union by which they were procured? Will they not henceforth be deaf to those advisers, if such there are, who would sever them from their brethren and connect them with aliens?

To the efficacy and permanence of your Union, a Government for the whole is indispensable. No alliance, however strict, between the parts, can be an adequate substitute; they must inevitably experience the infractions and interruptions which all alliances in all times have experienced. Sensible of this momentous truth, you have improved upon your first essay, by the adoption of a Constitution of Government better calculated than your former by an intimate Union, and for the efficacious management of your common concerns. The Government, the offspring of our own choice, uninfluenced and unawed, adopted upon full investigation and ma-

ture deliberation, completely free in its principles, in the distribution of its powers, uniting security with energy, and containing within itself a provision for its own amendment, has a just claim to your confidence and to your support. Respect for its authority, compliance with its laws, acquiescence in its measures, are duties enjoined by the fundamental maxims of true liberty. The basis of our political system is the right of the people to make and to alter their Constitutions of Government; but the Constitution, which at any time exists, till changed by an explicit and authentic act of the whole people, is sacredly obligatory upon all. The very idea of the power and the right of the people to establish Government, presupposes the duty of every individual to obey the established Government.

All obstructions to the execution of the laws, all combinations and associations, under whatever plausible character, with the real design to direct, control, counteract, or awe the regular deliberation and action of the constituted authorities, are destructive of this fundamental principle, and of fatal tendency. They serve to organize faction, to give it an artificial and extraordinary force—to put in the place of the delegated will of the nation the will of the party, often a small but artful and enterprising minority of the community; and, according to the alternate triumphs of different parties, to make the public administration the mirror of the ill-concerted and incongruous projects of a faction, rather than the organ of consistent and wholesome plans digested by common councils, and modified by mutual interests.

However constitutions or associations of the above description may now and then answer popular ends, they are likely, in the course of time and things, to become potent engines, by which cunning, ambitious and unprincipled men will be enabled to subvert the power of the people, and to usurp for themselves the reins of government; destroying afterwards the very engines which have lifted them to unjust dominion.

Towards the preservation of your Government, and the permanency of your present happy state, it is requisite, not only that you steadily discountenance irregular opposition to its acknowledged authority, but also that you resist with care the spirit of innovation upon its principles, however specious the pretexts. One method of assault may be to effect, in the form of the Constitution, alterations which will impair the energy of the system, and thus to undermine what cannot be directly overthrown.

In all the changes to which you may be invited, remember that time and habit are at least as necessary to fix the true character of Governments as of other human institutions—that experience is the surest standard by which to test the real tendency of the existing Constitutions of a Country—that facility in changes, upon the credit of mere hypothesis and opinion exposes to perpetual change, from the endless variety of hypothesis and opinion; and remember, especially, that for the efficient management of your common interests, in a Country so extensive as ours, a Government of as much vigour as is consistent with the perfect security of liberty, is indispensable. Liberty itself will find in such a Government, with powers properly distributed

and adjusted, the surest guardian. It is, indeed, little else than a name, where the Government is too feeble to withstand the enterprises of faction, to confine each member of the society within the limits prescribed by the laws, and to maintain all in the tranquil and secure enjoyment of the rights of person and property.

I have already intimated to you the danger of parties in the state, with particular reference to the founding of them on geographical discriminations. Let me now take a more comprehensive view, and warn you in the most solemn manner against the baneful effects of the spirit of party generally.

This spirit, unfortunately, is inseparable from our nature, having its root in the strongest passions of the human mind.—It exists under different shapes in all governments, more or less stifled, controlled, or oppressed: but in those of the popular form, it is often in its greatest rankness, and is truly their worst enemy.

The alternate domination of one faction over another, sharpened by the spirit of revenge natural to party dissention, which in different ages and countries has perpetrated the most horrid cruelties, is itself a most horrid despotism. The disorders and miseries which result, gradually incline the minds of men to seek security and repose in the absolute power of an individual; and, sooner or later, the chief of some prevailing faction, more able or more fortunate than his competitors, turns this disposition to the purposes of his own elevation, on the ruins of public liberty.

Without looking forward to an extremity of this kind, (which, nevertheless, ought not to

be entirely out of sight,) the common and continued mischiefs of the spirit of party is sufficient to make it the interest and duty of a wise people to discourage and restrain it.

It serves always to distract the public councils, and enfeeble the public administration. It agitates the community with ill-founded jealousies and false alarms; kindles the animosity of one part against another; foments occasionally riot and insurrection. It opens the door to foreign influence and corruption, which find a facilitated access to the Government itself, through the channels of party passions. Thus the policy and the will of one country are subjected to the policy and will of another.

There is an opinion that parties in free countries are useful checks upon the administration of the Government, and serve to keep alive the spirit of liberty. This, within certain limits, is probably true; and in Governments of a monarchical cast, patriotism may look with indulgence, if not with favour, upon the spirit of party. But in those of the popular character, in Governments partly elective, it is a spirit not to be encouraged. From their natural tendency, it is certain there will always be enough of that spirit for every salutary purpose. And there being constant danger of excess, the effect ought to be by force of public opinion to mitigate and assuage it. A fire not to be quenched; it demands an uniform vigilance to prevent its bursting into a flame, lest, instead of warming, it should consume.

It is important, likewise, that the habits of thinking, in a free country, should inspire with caution, those entrusted with its administration, to confine themselves within their respective constitutional spheres, avoiding, in the exercise of the powers of one department to encroach upon another. The spirit of encroachment tends to consolidate the powers of all the departments in one, and thus to create, whatever the form of government, real despotism. A just estimate of that love of power, and proneness to abuse it, which predominates in the human heart, is sufficient to satisfy us of the truth of this position. The necessity of reciprocal checks in the exercise of political powers, by dividing and distributing it into different repositories, and constituting each the guardian of the public weal against invasions by the others, has been evinced by experiments, ancient and modern: some of them in our country, and under our own eyes. To preserve them must be as necessary as to institute them. If, in the opinion of the people, the distribution and modification of the Constitutional Powers be in any particular wrong, let it be corrected by an amendment in the way which the Constitution designates. But let there be no change by usurpation; for though this, in one instance, may be the instrument of good, it is the customary weapon by which free Governments are destroyed. The precedent must always greatly overbalance in permanent evil any partial or transient benefit which the use can at any time yield.

Of all the dispositions and habits which lead to political prosperity, Religion and Morality

are indispensable supports. In vain would that man claim the tribute of patriotism, who should labour to subvert these great pillars of human happiness, these firmest props of men and citizens. The mere politician, equally with the pious man, ought to respect and to cherish them. A volume could not trace all their connexions with private and public felicity. Let it be simply added, where is the security for property, for reputation, for life, if the sense of religious obligation *desert* the oaths which are the instruments of investigation in Courts of Justice? And let us with caution indulge the supposition, that morality can be obtained without religion. Whatever may be conceded to the influence of refined education on minds of peculiar structure; reason and experience both forbid us to expect that national morality can prevail in exclusion of religious principle.

'Tis substantially true, that virtue or morality is a necessary spring of popular government.—The rule, indeed, extends with more or less force to every species of free government. Who that is a sincere friend to it, can look with indifference upon attempts to shake the foundation of the fabric?

Promote, then, as an object of primary importance, institutions for the general diffusion of knowledge. In proportion as the structure of Government gives force to public opinion, it is essential that public opinion should be enlightened.

As a very important source of strength and security, cherish public credit. One method of

preserving it is to use it as sparingly as possible; avoiding occasions of expence by cultivating peace, but remembering also, that timely disbursements, to prepare for danger, frequently prevent much greater disbursements to repel it, avoiding likewise the accumulation of debt, not only by shunning occasions of expense, but by vigorous exertions in time of peace to discharge the debts which unavoidable wars may have occasioned, not ungenerously throwing upon posterity the burthen which we ourselves ought to bear. The execution of these maxims belongs to your Representatives, but it is necessary that public opinion should co-operate. To facilitate to them the performance of their duty, it is essential that you should practically bear in mind, that towards the payment of debts there must be a revenue; that to have a revenue, there must be taxes; that no taxes can be devised which are not more or less inconvenient and unpleasant: that the intrinsic embarrassment inseparable from the selection of the proper objects (which is always a choice of difficulties) ought to be a decisive motive for a candid construction of the conduct of the Government in making it, and for a spirit of acquiescence in the measures for obtaining revenue, which the public exigencies may at any time dictate.

Observe good faith and justice towards all nations; cultivate peace and harmony with all. Religion and Morality enjoin this conduct; and can it be that good policy does not equally enjoin it? It will be worthy of a free, enlightened, and, at no great distant period, a great nation, to give to mankind the magnanimous, and too

novel, example of a people always guided by an exalted justice and benevolence. Who can doubt that, in the course of time and things, the fruits of such a plan would richly repay any temporary advantages which might be lost by a steady adherence to it? Can it be that Providence has not connected the permanent felicity of a nation with its virtue? The experiment, at least, is recommended by every sentiment which ennobles human nature. Alas! is it rendered impossible by its vices?

In the execution of such a plan, nothing is more essential than that permanent, inveterate antipathies against particular nations, and passionate attachments for others, should be excluded; and that, in place of them, just and amicable feelings towards all should be cultivated. The nation which indulges towards another an habitual hatred, or an habitual fondness, is in some degree a slave. It is a slave to its animosity, or to its affection, either of which is sufficient to lead it astray from its duty and its interest. Antipathy in one nation against another disposes each more readily to offer insult and injury, to lay hold of slight causes of umbrage, and to be haughty and intractable, when accidental and trifling occasions of dispute occur. Hence frequent collisions, obstinate, envenomed, and bloody contests. The nation, prompted by ill-will and resentment, sometimes impels to war the government, contrary to the best calculations of policy. The government sometimes participates in the national propensity, and adopts through passion what reason would reject; at other times it makes the ani-

mosity of the nation subservient to projects of hostility, instigated by pride, ambition, and other sinister and ambitious motives. — The peace often, sometimes perhaps the liberty of nations, has been the victim.

So, likewise, a passionate attachment of one nation for another, produces a variety of evils. Sympathy for the favourite nation, facilitating the illusion of an imaginary common interest, in cases where no real common interest exists, and infusing into one the enmities of the other, betrays the former into a participation in the quarrels and wars of the latter, without adequate inducement or justification. It leads also to concessions to the favourite nation of privileges denied to others, which is apt doubly to injure the nation making the concessions; by unnecessarily parting with what ought to have been retained; and by exciting jealousy, ill-will, and a disposition to retaliate, in the parties from whom equal privileges are withheld; and it gives to ambitious, corrupted, or deluded citizens, (who devote themselves to the favourite nation) facility to betray or sacrifice the interests of their own country, without odium, sometimes even with popularity; gilding with the appearance of a virtuous sense of obligation, a commendable deference for public opinion, or a laudable zeal for public good, the base or foolish compliances of ambition, corruption, or infatuation.

As the avenues to foreign influence are in innumerable ways, such attachments are particularly alarming to the truly enlightened and independent patriot. How many opportunities do they afford to tamper with domestic factions,

to practise the arts of seduction, to mislead public opinion, to influence or awe the public councils! Such an attachment of a small or weak, towards a great and powerful nation, dooms the former to be the satellite of the latter.

Against the insiduous wiles of foreign influence, (I conjure you to believe me, fellow-citizens,) the jealousy of a free people ought to be constantly awake; since history and experience prove that foreign influence is one of the most baneful foes of a Republican Government. But that jealousy, to be useful, must be impartial; else it becomes the instrument of the very influence to be avoided, instead of a defence against it.—Excessive partiality for one nation, and excessive dislike of another, cause those whom they actuate to see danger only on one side, and serve to veil, and even second the arts of influence on the other. Real patriots who may resist the intrigues of the favourite, are liable to become suspected and odious; while its tools and dupes usurp the applause and confidence of the people, to surrender their interests.

The great rule of conduct for us, in regard to foreign nations, is, in extending our commercial relations, to have with them as little *political* connexion as possible. So far as we have already formed engagements, let them be fulfilled with perfect good faith.—Here let us stop.

Europe has a set of primary interests, which to us have none, or a very remote relation. Hence she must be engaged in frequent controversies, the causes of which are essentially foreign to our concerns. Hence, therefore, it must

be unwise in us to implicate ourselves by artificial ties in the ordinary vicissitudes of her politics, or the ordinary combinations and collisions of her friendships or enmities.

Our detached and distant situation invites and enables us to pursue a different course. If we remain one people, under an efficient government, the period is not far off when we may defy material injury from external annoyance: when we may take such an attitude as will cause the neutrality, we may at any time resolve upon, to be scrupulously respeted; when belligerent nations, under the impossibility of making acquisitions upon us, will not lightly hazard the giving us provocation; when we may choose peace or war, as our interest, guided by justice, shall counsel.

Why forego the advantages of so peculiar a situation? Why quit our own, to stand upon foreign ground? Why, by interweaving our destiny with that of any part of Europe, entangle our peace and prosperity in the toils of European ambition, rivalship, interest, humour, or caprice?

It is our true policy to steer clear of permanent alliances with any portion of the foreign world: so far, I mean, as we are now at liberty to do it; for let me not be understood as capable of patronizing infidelity to existing engagements. I hold the maxim no less applicable to public than to private affairs, that honesty is always the best policy. I repeat it, therefore, let those engagements be observed in their genuine sense. But, in my opinion, it is unnecessary and would be unwise to extend them.

Taking care always to keep ourselves, by

suitable establishments, on a respectable defensive posture, we may safely trust to temporary alliances for extraordinary emergencies.

Harmony, liberal intercourse with all nations, are recommended by policy, humanity, and interest. But even our commercial policy should hold an equal and impartial hand; neither seeking nor granting exclusive favours or preferences; consulting the natural course of things; diffusing and diversifying by gentle means the streams of commerce, but forcing nothing; establishing, with powers so disposed, in order to give trade a stable course, to define the rights of our merchants, and to enable Government to support them, conventional rules of intercourse, the best that present circumstances and mutual opinion will permit, but temporary, and liable to be from time to time abandoned or varied, as experience and circumstances shall dictate; constantly keeping in view, that it is folly in one nation to look for disinterested favours from another; that it must pay with a portion of its independence for whatever it may accept under that character; that by such acceptance it may place itself in the condition of having given equivalents for nominal favours, and yet of being reproached with ingratitude for not giving more. There can be no greater error than to expect or calculate upon real favours from nation to nation. It is an illusion which experience must cure, which a just pride ought to discard.

In offering to you, my countrymen, these counsels of an old and affectionate friend, I dare not hope they will make the strong and lasting impressions I could wish; that they will control the usual current of the passions, or prevent

our nation from running the course which has hitherto marked the destiny of nations. But if I may even flatter myself that they may be productive of some partial benefit, some occasional good; that they may now and then recur to moderate the fury of party spirit, to warn against the mischiefs of foreign intrigue, to guard against the impostures of pretended patriotism: this hope will be a full recompense for the solicitude for your welfare, by which they have been dictated.

How far, in the discharge of my official duties, I have been guided by the principles which have been delineated, the public records, and other evidences of my conduct, must witness to you and to the world. To myself, the assurance of my own conscience is, that I have at least believed myself to be guided by them.

In relation to the still subsisting war in Europe, my proclamation of the 22d April, 1793, is the index to my plan. Sanctioned by your approving voice, and by that of your Representatives in both Houses of Congress, the spirit of that measure has continually governed me; uninfluenced by any attempts to deter or divert me from it.

After deliberate examination, with the aid of the best lights I could obtain, I was well satisfied that our country, under all the circumstances of the case, had a right to take, and was bound in duty and interest to take, a neutral position. Having taken it, I determined, as far as should depend upon me, to maintain it with moderation, perseverance and firmness.

The considerations which respect the right to hold this conduct, it is not necessary, on this

occasion, to detail. I will only observe, that according to my understanding of the matter, that right, so far from being denied by any of the belligerent powers, has been virtually admitted by all.

The duty of holding a neutral conduct may be inferred, without any thing more, from the obligation which justice and humanity impose on every nation in cases in which it is free to act, to maintain inviolate the relations of peace and amity towards other nations.

The inducements of interest for observing that conduct, will best be referred to your own reflections and experience. With me a predominant motive has been to endeavour to gain time to our country to settle and mature its yet recent institutions, and to progress without interruption to that degree of strength and consistency which is necessary to give it, humanly speaking, the command of its own fortunes.

Though in reviewing the incidents of administration, I am unconscious of intentional error, I am nevertheless too sensible of my defects not to think it probable that I may have committed many errors. Whatever they may be, I fervently beseech the Almighty to avert or mitigate the evils to which they may tend. I shall also carry with me the hope that my country will never cease to view them with indulgence; and that after forty-five years of my life dedicated to its service, with an upright zeal, the faults of incompetent abilities will be consigned to oblivion, as myself must soon be to the mansions of rest.

Relying on its kindness in this as in other things, and actuated by that fervent love to-

wards it, which is so natural to a man who views in it the native soil of himself and his progenitors for several generations; I anticipate, with pleasing expectation, that retreat, in which I promise myself to realize, without alloy, the sweet enjoyment of partaking, in the midst of my fellow-citizens, the benign influence of good laws under a free government, the ever favourite object of my heart, and the happy reward, as I trust, of our mutual cares, labours, and dangers.

GEORGE WASHINGTON.

United States, Sept. 17, 1796.

THE CONSTITUTION

AND FORM OF GOVERNMENT

OF THE

STATE OF MARYLAND.

THE DECLARATION OF RIGHTS,

As it is considered to stand, by ingrafting, in the sections to which they respectively refer, the alterations made by successive Laws, and those which have arisen under the Constitution of the United States.

THE Parliament of Great-Britain, by a declaratory act, having assumed a right to make laws to bind the Colonies in all cases whatsoever, and in pursuance of such claim endeavoured by force of arms to subjugate the United Colonies to an unconditional submission to their will & power, and having at length constrained them to declare themselves Independent States, and to assume Government under the authority of the People, Therefore, WE, the Delegates of Mary-

land, in free and full Convention assembled, taking into our most serious consideration the best means of establishing a good Constitution in this State, for the surer foundation, and more permanent security thereof, DECLARE,

1. That all government of right originates from the people, is founded in compact only, and instituted solely for the good of the whole.

2. That the people of this state ought to have the sole and exclusive right of regulating the internal government and police thereof.

3. That the inhabitants of Maryland are entitled to the common law of England, and the trial by jury according to the course of that law, and to the benefit of such of the English statutes as existed at the time of their first emigration, and which by experience have been found applicable to their local and other circumstances, and of such others as have been since made in England or Great Britain, and have been introduced, used and practised by the courts of law or equity; and also to all acts of assembly in force on the first of June, seventeen hundred and seventy-four, except such as may have since expired, or have been, or may be altered by acts of convention, or this declaration of rights; subject nevertheless to the revision of, and amendment or repeal by, the legislature of this state; and the inhabitants of Maryland are also entitled to all property derived to them from or under the charter granted by his majesty Charles the first, to Cœcilius Calvert, Baron of Baltimore.

4. That all persons invested with the legislative or executive powers of government, are the trustees of the public, and as such accountable for their conduct; wherefore, whenever the

ends of government are perverted, and public liberty manifestly endangered, and all other means of redress are ineffectual, the people may, and of right ought, to reform the old, or establish a new government; the doctrine of nonresistance against arbitrary power and oppression, is absurd, slavish, and destructive of the good and happiness of mankind.

5. That the right in the people to participate in the legislature is the best security of liberty, and the foundation of all free government; for this purpose elections ought to be free and frequent, and every man having a common interest with, and an attachment to, the community, ought to have a right of suffrage.

6. That the legislative, executive and judicial powers of government, ought to be for ever separate and distinct from each other.

7. That no power of suspending laws, or the execution of laws, unless by or derived from the legislature, ought to be exercised or allowed.

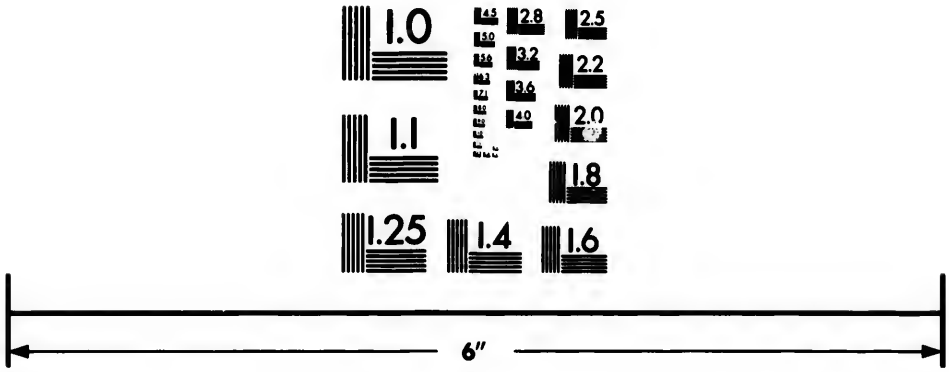
8. That freedom of speech, and debates or proceedings, in the legislature, ought not to be impeached in any other court or judicature.

9. That a place for the meeting of the legislature ought to be fixed, the most convenient to the members thereof, and to the depository of the public records, and the legislature ought not to be convened or held at any other place but from evident necessity.

10. That for the redress of grievances, and for amending, strengthening and preserving the laws, the legislature ought to be frequently convened.

11, That every man hath a right to petition

IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic
Sciences
Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503


2.8
2.5
3.2
3.6
2.2
4.0
2.0
1.8
1.0

the legislature for the redress of grievances, in a peaceable and orderly manner.

12. That no aid, charge, tax, burthen, fee or fees, ought to be set, rated or levied, under any pretence, without the consent of the legislature.

13. That the levying taxes by the poll is grievous and oppressive, and ought to be abolished; that paupers ought not to be assessed for the support of government, but every other person in the state ought to contribute his proportion of public taxes for the support of government according to his actual worth in real or personal property within this state; yet fines, duties or taxes, may properly and justly be imposed or laid with a political view for the good government and benefit of the community.

14. That sanguinary laws ought to be avoided, as far as is consistent with the safety of the state; and no law to inflict cruel and unusual pains and penalties ought to be made, in any case, or at any time hereafter.

15. That retrospective laws, punishing facts committed before the existence of such laws, and by them only declared criminal, are oppressive, unjust, and incompatible with liberty; wherefore no *ex post facto* law ought to be made.

16. That no law to attaint particular persons of treason or felony, ought to be made in any case, or at any time hereafter.

17. That every free man, for any injury done to him in his person or property, ought to have remedy by the course of the law of the land, and ought to have justice and right, freely without sale, fully without any denial, and speedily without delay, according to the law of the land.

18. That the trial of facts where they arise, is one of the greatest securities of the lives, liberties and estate of the people.

19. That in all criminal prosecutions, every man hath a right to be informed of the accusation against him, to have a copy of the indictment or charge in due time (if required) to prepare for his defence, to be allowed counsel, to be confronted with the witnesses against him, to have process for his witnesses, to examine the witnesses for and against him on oath, and to a speedy trial by an impartial jury, without whose unanimous consent he ought not to be found guilty.

20. That no man ought to be compelled to give evidence against himself in a court of common law, or in any other court, but in such cases as have been usually practised in this state, or may hereafter be directed by the legislature.

21. That no free man ought to be taken or imprisoned, or disseized of his freehold, liberties or privileges, or outlawed, or exiled, or in any manner destroyed, or deprived of his life, liberty or property, but by the judgment of his peers, or by the law of the land.

22. That excessive bail ought not to be required, nor excessive fines imposed, nor cruel or unusual punishments inflicted by the courts of law.

23. That all warrants without oath, or affirmation, to search suspected places, or to seize any person or property, are grievous and oppressive; and all general warrants to search suspected places, or to apprehend suspected persons, without naming or describing the place,

or the person in special, are illegal, and ought not to be granted.

24. That there ought to be no forfeiture of any part of the estate of any person for any crime except murder, or treason against the state, and then only on conviction and attainder.

25. That a well regulated militia is the proper and natural defence of a free government.

26. That standing armies are dangerous to liberty, and ought not to be raised or kept up without consent of the legislature.

27. That in all cases and at all times the military ought to be under strict subordination to, and control of, the civil power.

28. That no soldier ought to be quartered in any house in time of peace without the consent of the owner, and in time of war in such manner only as the legislature shall direct.

29. That no person except regular soldiers, mariners and marines, in the service of this state, or militia when in actual service, ought in any case to be subject to, or punishable by martial law.

30. That the independency and uprightness of judges are essential to the impartial administration of justice, and a great security to the rights and liberties of the people; wherefore, the chancellor, and all judges, ought to hold commissions during good behaviour, and the said chancellor and judges shall be removed for misbehaviour, on conviction in a court of law, and may be removed by the governor, upon the address of the general assembly, provided that two thirds of all the members of each house concur in such address. That salaries, liberal, but not profuse, ought to be secured to the chancellor and

the judges, during the continuance of their commissions, in such manner and at such time as the legislature shall hereafter direct, upon consideration of the circumstances of this state. No chancellor or judge ought to hold any other office, civil or military, or receive fees or perquisites of any kind.

31. That a long continuance in the first executive departments of power or trust, is dangerous to liberty, a rotation therefore in those departments is one of the best securities of permanent freedom.

32. That no person ought to hold at the same time more than one office of profit, nor ought any person in public trust to receive any present from any foreign prince or state, or from the United States, or any of them, without the approbation of this state.

33. That as it is the duty of every man to worship God in such manner as he thinks most acceptable to him, all persons professing the Christian religion are equally entitled to protection in their religious liberty; wherefore, no person ought, by any law, to be molested in his person or estate on account of his religious persuasion or profession, or for his religious practice, unless under colour of religion any man shall disturb the good order, peace or safety of the state, or shall infringe the laws of morality, or injure others in their natural, civil, or religious rights; nor ought any person to be compelled to frequent, or maintain, or contribute, unless on contract, to maintain any place of worship, or any ministry. That it shall not be lawful for the general assembly of the state to lay an equal and general tax, or any other

tax, on the people of this state, for the support of any religion. But the churches, chapels glebes, and all other property, now belonging to the church of England, ought to remain to the church of England for ever. And all acts of assembly lately passed for collecting monies for building and repairing particular churches, or chapels of ease, shall continue in force, and be executed, unless the legislature shall by act supersede or repeal the same; but no county court shall assess any quantity of tobacco, or sum of money hereafter, on the application of any vestrymen or church-wardens; and every incumbent of the church of England, who hath remained in his parish, and performed his duty, shall be entitled to receive the provision and support established by the act, entitled, An act for the support of the clergy of the church of England in this province, till the November court of this present year, to be held for the county in which his parish shall lie, or partly lie, or for such time as he hath remained in his parish and performed his duty.

34, That every gift, sale, or devise of lands, to any minister, public teacher, or preacher of the gospel, as such, or to any religious sect, order or denomination, or to or for the support, use or benefit of, or in trust for, any minister, public teacher, or preacher of the gospel, as such, or any religious sect, order or denomination; and every gift or sale of goods or chattels, to go in succession or to take place after the death of the seller or donor, to or for such support, use or benefit; and also every devise of goods or chattels to, or to or for the support, use or benefit of, any minister, public teacher,

or preacher of the gospel, as such, or any religious sect, order or denomination, without the leave of the legislature, shall be void; except always any sale, gift, lease or devise, of any quantity of land, not exceeding two acres, for a church, meeting, or other house of worship, and for a burying ground, which shall be improved, enjoyed or used, only for such purpose, or such sale, gift, lease or devise, shall be void.

35. That no other test or qualification ought to be required on admission to any office of trust or profit, than such oath of support and fidelity to this state, and such oath of office, as shall be directed by this convention, or the legislature of this state, and a declaration of a belief in the Christian religion.

36. That the manner of administering an oath to any person, ought to be such as those of the religious persuasion, profession or denomination, of which such person is one, generally esteem the most effectual confirmation, by the attestation of the Divine Being. And that the people called Quakers, those called Tunkers, and those called Menonists, holding it unlawful to take an oath on any occasion, ought to be allowed to make their solemn affirmation in the manner that Quakers have been heretofore allowed to affirm, and to be of the same avail as an oath, in all such cases as the affirmation of Quakers hath been allowed and accepted within this state instead of an oath. And further, on such affirmation, warrants to search for stolen goods, or the apprehension or commitment of offenders, ought to be granted, or security for the peace awarded; and Quakers, Tunkers or Menonists, ought also, on their solemn affirmation as afore-

said, to be admitted as witnesses in all criminal cases not capital.

37. That the city of Annapolis ought to have all its rights, privileges and benefits, agreeable to its charter, and the acts of assembly confirming and regulating the same; subject nevertheless to such alterations as may be made by this convention, or any future legislature.

38. That the liberty of the press ought to be inviolably preserved.

39. That monopolies are odious, contrary to the spirit of a free government, and the principles of commerce, and ought not to be suffered.

40. That no title of nobility or hereditary honours ought to be granted in this state.

41. That the subsisting resolves of this and the several conventions held for this colony, ought to be in force as laws, unless altered by this convention, or the legislature of this state.

42. That this declaration of rights, or the form of government to be established by this convention, or any part of either of them, ought not to be altered, changed or abolished, by the legislature of this state, but in such manner as this convention shall prescribe and direct.

43. That all persons professing the Christian religion, who held it unlawful to take an oath on any occasion, shall be allowed to make their solemn affirmation, in the same manner that Quakers have heretofore been allowed to affirm, which affirmation shall be of the same avail as an oath to all intents and purposes whatever.

THE CONSTITUTION

AND

FORM OF GOVERNMENT,

As it is considered to stand, by ingrafting, in the sections to which they respectively refer, the alterations made by successive Laws, and those which have arisen under the Constitution of the United States.

1. THAT the legislature consist of two distinct branches, a Senate, and a House of Delegates, which shall be styled The General Assembly of Maryland.

2. That the house of delegates shall be chosen in the following manner: Every free white male citizen of this state, above twenty one years of age, and no other, having resided twelve months within this state, and six months in the county next preceding the election at which he offers to vote, shall have a right of suffrage in the election of delegates for such county; and all free white male citizens, so qualified, shall assemble in the counties in which they are respectively qualified to vote, in separate districts. And the several counties of this state, for the purpose of holding all future elections for delegates of the several counties, shall be divided into separate districts in the manner hereinafter directed, viz. Saint-Mary's county shall be divided and laid off into four separate districts; Kent county shall be divided and laid off into three separate districts; Calvert county shall be divided and laid off into three separate districts; Charles county shall

be divided and laid off into four separate districts; Talbot county shall be divided and laid off into four separate districts; Somerset county shall be divided and laid off into three separate districts; Dorchester county shall be divided and laid off into five separate districts; Cecil county shall be divided and laid off into four separate districts; Prince-George's county shall be divided and laid off into six separate districts; Queen-Anne's county shall be divided and laid off into three separate districts; Worcester county shall be divided and laid off into five separate districts; Frederick county shall be divided and laid off into nine separate districts; Harford county shall be divided and laid off into five separate districts; Carolina county shall be divided and laid off into three separate districts; Washington county shall be divided and laid off into five separate districts; Montgomery county shall be divided and laid off into five separate districts; Allegany county shall be divided and laid off into eight separate districts; Anne-Arundel county, excluding the city of Annapolis, shall be divided and laid off into five separate districts; all that part of the second election district of Anne-Arundel county, lying out of the city of Annapolis, shall constitute and compose the second election district of said county; and the polls for the second election district of Anne-Arundel county shall be held at the house of Jacob Waters, near the blacksmith's shop, on the main road leading from the city of Annapolis to the city of Washington; and Baltimore county, out of the limits of the city of Baltimore, shall be divided and laid off into seven districts; and the said citizens, when assembled, shall proceed to elect by

ballot, four delegates for their respective counties, of the most wise, sensible, and discreet of the people, residents in the county where they are to be chosen one whole year next preceding the election, above twenty-one years of age.

3. That all matters which relate to the judges, place, time and manner, of holding elections for delegates of the several counties, shall hereafter be regulated by law.

4. That every free white male citizen of this state, above twenty-one years of age, and no other, having resided twelve months within this state, and six months in the city of Annapolis, next preceding the election at which he offers to vote, shall have a right of suffrage, and shall, on the first Monday of October seventeen hundred and seventy-seven, and on the same day in every year for ever thereafter, vote by ballot, in the election of the said city, and elect by a majority of votes, two delegates to the general assembly of this state. That the mayor, recorder and aldermen, of the said city, or any three of them, be judges of the election, appoint the place in the said city for holding the same, and may adjourn from day to day, if necessary, till the same be finished, so that the whole election shall be concluded in four days, and shall make return thereof, under their hands, to the chancellor of this state for the time being. But the inhabitants of the said city shall not be entitled to vote for delegates for Anne-Arundel county. That the city of Annapolis shall constitute the sixth election district of Anne-Arundel county for all elections hereafter to be held for sheriffs, electors of president and vice-president,

and electors of the senate of this state, and for a member of congress, which said elections shall be held by the mayor, recorder and aldermen, of the said city, or any three or more of them, at such place within the said city as they may appoint. That the mayor, recorder and aldermen, of said city, or a majority of them, authorised to hold elections as aforesaid, shall make return under their hands and seals, within the time prescribed by law, of the votes taken by them at any election held in virtue of this act, to the presiding judges of the other election districts of said county. That the presiding judges of the said election districts, in making out their returns, shall compute and receive as a part of the votes taken at any such election, the returns made to them by virtue of this act, by the said mayor, recorder and aldermen.

5. That every free white male citizen of this state, above twenty-one years of age, and no other, having resided twelve months within this state, and six months in the city of Baltimore, next preceding the election at which he offers to vote, shall have a right of suffrage, and shall vote by ballot in the election of the said city, in districts, and elect, by a majority of votes, two delegates to the general assembly of this state, qualified as aforesaid; but if the said inhabitants of the city, shall so decrease, as that the number of persons having a right of suffrage therein shall have been, for the space of seven years successively, less than one half of the number of voters in some one county in this state, such city thenceforward shall cease to send two delegates or representatives to the house of delegates, until the said city shall have one half of

the number of voters in some one county in this state. And for the purpose of holding all future elections for delegates, the city of Baltimore shall be laid off into eight districts. The number and limits of election districts in the city of Baltimore shall always be the same as the wards therein.

6. That all matters relating to the judges, time, place and manner, of holding elections in the city of Baltimore, shall hereafter be regulated by law; but the inhabitants of the said city shall not be entitled to vote for or be elected delegates for Baltimore county, neither shall the inhabitants of Baltimore county, out of the limits of the city of Baltimore, be entitled to vote for or be elected delegates for the said city.

7. That on refusal, death, disqualification, resignation, or removal out of this state, of any delegate, or on his becoming governor or member of the council, a warrant of election shall issue by the speaker for the election of another in his place, of which ten days notice at the least, excluding the day of notice and the day of election, shall be given.

8. That not less than a majority of the delegates, with their speaker, (to be chosen by them by ballot,) constitute a house for the transacting any business other than that of adjourning.

9. That the house of delegates shall judge of the elections and qualifications of delegates.

10. That the house of delegates may originate all money bills, propose bills to the senate, or receive those offered by that body, and assent, dissent or propose amendments; that they may inquire, on the oath of witnesses, into all complaints, grievances and offences, as the grand

inquest of this state, and may commit any person for any crime to the public gaol, there to remain till he be discharged by due course of law; they may expel any member for a great misdemeanor, but not a second time for the same cause; they may examine and pass all accounts of the state, relating either to the collection or expenditure of the revenue, or appoint auditors to state and adjust the same; they may call for all public or official papers and records, and send for persons whom they may judge necessary in the course of their inquiries concerning affairs relating to the public interest, and may direct all office bonds, (which shall be made payable to the state,) to be sued for any breach of duty.

11. That the senate may be at full and perfect liberty to exercise their judgment in passing laws, and that they may not be compelled by the house of delegates, either to reject a money bill which the emergency of affairs may require, or to assent to some other act of legislation, in their conscience and judgment, injurious to the public welfare, the house of delegates shall not, on any occasion, or under any pretence, annex to or blend with a money bill, any matter, clause or thing, not immediately relating to, and necessary for, the imposing, assessing, levying or applying, the taxes or supplies to be raised for the support of government, or the current expenses of the state; and to prevent altercation about such bills, it is declared, that no bill imposing duties or customs for the mere regulation of commerce, or inflicting fines for the reformation of morals, or to enforce the execution of the laws, by which an incidental revenue may

arise, shall be accounted a money bill; but every bill assessing, levying, or applying taxes or supplies for the support of government, or the current expenses of the state, or appropriating money in the treasury, shall be deemed a money bill.

12. That the house of delegates may punish, by imprisonment, any person who shall be guilty of a contempt in their view, by any disorderly or riotous behaviour, or by threats to, or abuse of, their members, or by any obstruction to their proceedings; they may also punish, by imprisonment, any person who shall be guilty of a breach of privilege, by arresting on civil process, or by assaulting, any of their members, during their sitting, or on their way to or return from the house of delegates, or by any assault of or obstruction to their officers, in the execution of any order or process, or by assaulting or obstructing any witness, or any other person, attending on, or on their way to or from the house, or by rescuing any person committed by the house; and the senate may exercise the same power, in similar cases.

13. That the treasurers, (one for the western and another for the eastern shore,) and the commissioners of the loan office, may be appointed by the house of delegates during their pleasure; and in case of refusal, death, resignation, disqualification or removal out of the state, of any of the said commissioners, or treasurers, in the recess of the general assembly, the governor, with the advice of the council, may appoint and commission a fit and proper person to such va-

cant office, to hold the same until the meeting of the next general assembly.

14. That the senate be chosen in the following manner: All persons qualified as aforesaid to vote for county delegates, shall elect, by ballot, by a majority of votes, two persons for their respective counties, qualified as aforesaid to be elected county delegates, to be electors of the senate. And all persons qualified as aforesaid to vote for delegates for the city of Annapolis, shall, on the first Monday of September 1781, and on the same day in every fifth year for ever thereafter, elect, by ballot, by a majority of votes, one person for the said city, qualified as aforesaid to be elected a delegate for the said city; the said election to be held in the same manner as the election of delegates for the said city. That the city of Annapolis shall constitute the sixth election district of Anne-Arundel county for all elections hereafter to be held for electors of the senate of this state. And all persons qualified as aforesaid to vote for delegates for the city of Baltimore, shall elect, by ballot, by a majority of votes, one person for the said city, qualified as aforesaid, to be elected a delegate for the said city; the said election to be held in the same manner as the election of delegates for the said city. The right to elect the said elector with respect to the city of Baltimore, to continue as long as the right to elect delegates for the said city. That all matters relating to the judges, time, place and manner, of holding elections in the city of Baltimore, and which relate to the judges, place, time and manner, of holding elections for electors of the senate, of the several counties, shall hereafter be

regulated by law. But no member of congress, or person holding an office of trust or profit under the United States, shall be capable of being an elector of the senate; and if any elector of the senate shall take his seat in congress, or accept of an office of trust, or profit under the United States, or being elected to congress, or appointed to an office of trust or profit under the United States, not make his resignation of his seat in congress, or of his office, as the case may be, within thirty days after notice of his election or appointment to office as aforesaid, his seat as elector of the senate shall be void.

15. That the said electors of the senate meet at the city of Annapolis, or such other place as shall be appointed for convening the legislature, on the third Monday in September 1781, and on the same day in every fifth year for ever thereafter; and they, or any twenty-four of them, so met, shall proceed to elect, by ballot, either out of their own body, or the people at large, fifteen senators, (nine of whom to be residents on the western, and six to be residents on the eastern shore,) men of the most wisdom, experience and virtue, above twenty-five years of age, residents of the state above three whole years next preceding the election.

16. That the senators shall be balloted for at one and the same time, and out of the gentlemen, residents of the western shore, who shall be proposed as senators, the nine who shall, on striking the ballots, appear to have the greatest numbers in their favour, shall be accordingly declared and returned duly elected; and out of the gentlemen, residents of the eastern shore, who shall be proposed as senators, the six who

shall, on striking the ballots, appear to have the greatest numbers in their favour, shall be accordingly declared and returned duly elected; and if two or more on the same shore shall have an equal number of ballots in their favour, by which the choice shall not be determined on the first ballot, then the electors shall again ballot before they separate, in which they shall be confined to the persons who on the first ballot shall have had an equal number; and they who shall have the greatest number in their favour on the second ballot, shall be accordingly declared and returned duly elected; and if the whole number should not thus be made up, because of an equal number on the second ballot still being in favour of two or more persons, then the election shall be determined by lot, between those who have equal numbers, which proceedings of the electors shall be certified under their hands, and returned to the chancellor for the time being.

17. That the electors of senators shall judge of the qualifications and elections of members of their body, and on a contested election, shall admit to a seat, as an elector, such qualified person as shall appear to them to have the greatest number of legal votes in his favour.

18. That the electors immediately on their meeting, and before they proceed to the election of senators, take such oath, or affirmation, of support and fidelity to this state, as this convention or the legislature shall direct, and also an oath, or affirmation, to elect, without favour or affection, partiality or prejudice, such persons for senators, as they in their judgment and conscience believe best qualified for the office.

19. That in case of refusal, death, resigna-

tion, disqualification, or removal out of this state, of any senator, or on his becoming governor, or a member of the council, the senate shall immediately thereupon, or at their next meeting thereafter, elect by ballot, in the same manner as the electors are above directed to choose senators, another person in his place for the residue of the said term of five years.

20. That not less than a majority of the senate, with their president, (to be chosen by them by ballot,) shall constitute a house for the transacting any business other than that of adjourning.

21. That the senate shall judge of the elections and qualifications of senators.

22. That the senate may originate any other except money bills, to which their assent or dissent only shall be given, and may receive any other bills from the house of delegates, and assent, dissent, or propose amendments.

23. That the General Assembly meet annually, on the first Monday of December, and if necessary oftener.

24. That each house shall appoint its own officers, and settle its own rules of proceeding.

25. That a person of wisdom, experience and virtue, shall be chosen governor on the second Monday of December in each and every year, by the joint ballot of both houses, to be taken in each house respectively, deposited in a conference room, the boxes to be examined by a joint committee of both houses, and the numbers severally reported, that the appointment may be entered; which mode of taking the joint ballot of both houses shall be adopted in all cases. But if two or more shall have an equal number

of ballots in their favour, by which the choice shall not be determined on the first ballot, then a second ballot shall be taken, which shall be confined to the persons who on the first ballot shall have had an equal number; and if the ballots should again be equal between two or more persons, then the election of the governor shall be determined by lot, between those who have equal numbers; and if the person chosen governor shall die, resign, remove out of the state, or refuse to act, (sitting the general assembly,) the senate and house of delegates shall immediately thereupon proceed to a new choice in manner aforesaid.

26. That the senators and delegates, on the first Tuesday after the second Monday of December in each and every year, elect, by joint ballot, in the same manner as senators are directed to be chosen, five of the most sensible, discreet and experienced men, above twenty five years of age, residents in the state above three years next preceding the election, to be the council to the governor, whose proceedings shall be always entered on record, to any part whereof any member may enter his dissent; and their advice, if so required by the governor, or any member of the council, shall be given in writing, and signed by the members giving the same respectively; which proceedings of the council shall be laid before the senate, or house of delegates, when called for by them, or either of them. The council may appoint their own clerk, who shall take such oath, or affirmation, of support and fidelity to this state as this convention or the legislature shall direct, and of secrecy in

such matters as he shall be directed by the board to keep secret.

27. (a)

28. That the senators and delegates, immediately on their annual meeting, and before they proceed to any business, and every person hereafter elected a senator or delegate, before he acts as such, shall take an oath, or affirmation, of support and fidelity to this state as aforesaid; and before the election of a governor, or members of the council, shall take an oath, or affirmation, "to elect, without favour, affection, partiality or prejudice, such person as governor, or member of the council, as they in their judgment and conscience believe best qualified for the office."

29. That the senate and delegates may adjourn themselves respectively, but if the two houses should not agree on the same time, but adjourn to different days, then shall the governor appoint and notify one of those days, or some day between, and the assembly shall then meet and be held accordingly; and he shall, if necessary, by advice of the council, call them before the time to which they shall in any manner be adjourned, on giving not less than ten days notice thereof; but the governor shall not adjourn the assembly otherwise than as aforesaid, nor prorogue or dissolve it at any time.

(a) It was intended by the framers of the constitution to prevent any alteration therein except in the manner prescribed by the fifty-ninth section thereof, but by the constitution of the general government the congress was newly organized, and the mode of electing representatives prescribed so as to render this section inoperative and no longer a part of the constitution. The section is numbered and left blank in order to preserve the original numbers of the other sections.

30. That no person, unless above twenty-five years of age, a resident in this state above five years next preceding the election, shall be eligible as governor.

31. That the governor shall not continue in that office longer than three years successively, nor be eligible as governor until the expiration of four years after he shall have been out of that office.

32. That upon the death, resignation, or removal out of this state, of the governor, the first named of the council for the time being shall act as governor, (and qualify in the same manner,) until the next meeting of the general assembly, at which meeting a governor shall be chosen in the manner heretofore appointed and directed.

33. That the governor, by and with the advice and consent of the council, may embody the militia, and when embodied shall alone have the direction thereof, and shall also have the direction of all the regular land and sea forces under the laws of this state, but he shall not command in person unless advised thereto by the council, and then only so long as they shall approve thereof, and may alone exercise all other the executive powers of government, where the concurrence of the council is not required according to the laws of this state, and grant reprieves or pardons for any crime, except in such cases where the law shall otherwise direct; and may also order and compel any vessel to ride quarantine, if such vessel, or the port from which she shall have come, shall on strong grounds, be suspected to be infected with the plague; but the governor shall not under any

pretence exercise any power or prerogative, by virtue of any law, statute or custom, of England or Great-Britain.

34. That the members of the council, or any three or more of them, when convened, shall constitute a board for the transacting of business; that the governor for the time being shall preside in the council, and be entitled to a vote on all questions in which they shall be divided in opinion; and in the absence of the governor the first named of the council shall preside, and as such shall also vote in all cases where the other members disagree in their opinion.

35. That in case of refusal, death, resignation, disqualification, or removal out of the state, by any person chosen a member of the council, the members thereof immediately thereupon, or at their next meeting thereafter, shall elect by ballot another person qualified as aforesaid in his place for the residue of the year.

36. That the council shall have power to make the great seal of this state, which shall be kept by the chancellor for the time being, and affixed to all laws, commissions, grants, and other public testimonials, as has been heretofore practised in this state.

37. That no senator, delegate of the assembly, or member of the council, if he shall qualify as such, shall hold or execute any office of profit, or receive the profits of any office exercised by any other person, during the time for which he shall be elected; nor shall any governor be capable of holding any other office of profit during the time for which he shall be elected. And no person holding a place of profit, or receiving

any part of the profits thereof, or receiving the profits, or any part of the profits, arising on any agency for supply of clothing or provisions for the army or navy, or holding any office under the United States, or any of them, or a minister or preacher of the gospel of any denomination, or any person employed in the regular land service or marine of this or the United States, shall have a seat in the general assembly or the council of this state. And no member of congress, or person holding an office of trust or profit under the United States, shall be capable of having a seat in the general assembly, or holding any office of trust or profit under this state. And if any member of the general assembly, or person holding an office of trust or profit under this state, shall take his seat in congress, or accept of an office of trust or profit under the United States, or, being elected to congress, or appointed to an office of trust or profit under the United States, not make his resignation of his seat in congress, or of his office, as the case may be, within thirty days after notice of his election or appointment to office as aforesaid, his seat in the legislature of this state, or of his office held under this state as aforesaid, shall be void.

38. That every governor, senator, delegate to assembly, and member of the council, before he acts as such, shall take an oath, or affirmation, that he will not receive, directly or indirectly at any time, any part of the profits of any office held by any other person during his acting in his office of governor, senator, delegate to assembly, or member of the council, or the profits, or any part of the profits, arising on any agency for the

supply of clothing or provisions for the army or navy.

39. That if any senator, delegate to assembly, or member of the council, shall hold or execute any office of profit, or receive, directly or indirectly, at any time, the profits, or any part of the profits, of any office exercised by any other person, during his acting as senator, delegate to assembly, or member of the council, his seat, on conviction in a court of law, by the oath, or affirmation, of two credible witnesses, shall be void, and he shall suffer the punishment for wilful and corrupt perjury, or be banished this state for ever, or disqualified for ever from holding any office or place of trust or profit, as the court may adjudge.

40. That the chancellor, clerks of the court of appeals, the clerks of the county courts, the registers of the land office, and the registers of wills, shall hold their commissions during good behaviour, removable only for misbehaviour on conviction in a court of law.

41. That there be a register of wills appointed for each county, who shall be commissioned by the governor, on the joint recommendation of the senate and house of delegates; and that upon the death, resignation, disqualification, or removal out of the county, by any register of wills, in the recess of the general assembly, the governor, with the advice of the council, may appoint and commission a fit and proper person to such vacant office, to hold the same until the meeting of the general assembly.

42. That sheriffs shall be elected in each county, by ballot, every third year; that is to say, two persons for the office of sheriff for each coun-

ty, the one of whom having the majority of votes, or if both have an equal number, either of them, at the discretion of the governor, to be commissioned by the governor for the said office; and having served for three years such person shall be ineligible for the four years next succeeding. Bond with security to be taken every year as usual; and no sheriff shall be qualified to act before the same is given. In case of death, refusal, resignation, disqualification, or removal out of the county, before the expiration of the three years, the other person chosen as aforesaid shall be commissioned by the governor to execute the said office for the residue of the said three years, the said person giving bond, with security, as aforesaid; and in case of his death, refusal, resignation, disqualification, or removal out of the county, before the expiration of the said three years, the governor, with the advice of the council, may nominate and commission a fit and proper person to execute the said office for the residue of the said three years, the said person giving bond and security as aforesaid. The election shall be held in separate districts as appointed for the election of delegates; and all matters relating to the judges, place, time and manner, of holding the elections for sheriffs of the several counties, shall hereafter be regulated by law. Every free white male citizen of this state, above twenty-one years of age, and no other, having resided twelve months within this state, and six months in the county, or in the city of Annapolis or Baltimore, next preceding the election at which he offers to vote, shall have a right of suffrage, and shall vote, by ballot, in the election of such county or city, or either of them, for sheriffs. No person to be eligible to the office of sheriff for a county, but an inhabitant of the said county above the age of twenty-one years.

43. That every person who shall offer to vote for delegates, or for the electors of the senate, or for the sheriff, shall, (if required by any three persons qualified to vote,) before he be admitted to poll, take such oath, or affirmation of support and fidelity to this state, as this convention or the legislature shall direct.

44. That a justice of the peace may be eligible as a senator, delegate, or member of the council, and may continue to act as a justice of the peace.

45. (a)

46. That all civil officers hereafter to be appointed for the several counties of this state, shall have been residents of the county respectively for which they shall be appointed six months next before their appointment, and shall continue residents of their county respectively during their continuance in office.

47. That the judges of the court of appeals, and judges of the county courts, may appoint the clerks of their respective courts; and in case of death, resignation, disqualification or removal out of the state, or from their respective shores, of either of the said clerks of the court of appeals, in the vacation of the said court, and in case of the refusal, death, resignation, disqualification or removal out of the county, of any of the said county clerks, in the vacation of the county court of which he is clerk, the governor, with the advice of the council, may appoint and commission a fit and proper person to such vacant office respectively, to hold the same until the meeting of the next court of appeals or county court, as the case may be.

48. That the governor for the time being, shall nominate, and by and with the advice and consent of the council, appoint the chancellor, and all judges and justices, naval officers, officers in the regular land and sea service, officers of the militia, registers of the land office, surveyors, and all other civil officers of government, (assessors, constables, and overseers of the roads only excepted,) and may also suspend or remove any civil officer who has not a commission during good behaviour, and

(a) This section, which declared that no field officer of the militia should be eligible as a senator, delegate or member of the council, was abolished by the act of November 1809, ch. 65, confirmed by 1810, ch. 78. It is numbered and left blank in order to preserve the original numbers of the other sections.

may suspend any militia officer for one month, and may also suspend or remove any regular officer in the land or sea service; and the governor may remove or suspend any militia officer in pursuance of the judgment of a court martial.

49. That all civil officers of the appointment of the governor and council, who do not hold commissions during good behaviour, shall be appointed annually in the third week of December, but if any of them shall be reappointed they may continue to act without any new commission or qualification: and every officer, though not reappointed, shall continue to act until the person who shall be appointed and commissioned in his stead shall be qualified.

50. That the governor, every member of the council, and every judge and justice, before they act as such, shall respectively take an oath, or affirmation, that he will not, through favour, affection or partiality, vote for any person to office, and that he will vote for such person as in his judgment and conscience he believes most fit and best qualified for the office, and that he has not made, nor will make, any promise or engagement to give his vote or interest in favour of any person.

51. That there be two registers of the land office, one upon the western, and one upon the eastern shores, that short extracts of the grants and certificates of the land on the western and eastern shores respectively, be made in separate books, at the public expense, and deposited in the offices of the said registers, in such manner as shall hereafter be provided by the general assembly.

52. That every chancellor, judge, register of wills, commissioner of the loan office, sheriff, treasurer, naval officer, register of the land office, register of the chancery court, and every clerk of the common law courts, surveyor, and auditor of public accounts, before he acts as such, shall take an oath, or affirmation,

that he will not, directly or indirectly, receive any fee or reward for doing his office of ——, but what is or shall be allowed by law, nor will, directly or indirectly, receive the profits, or any part of the profits, of any office held by any other person, and that he does not hold the same office in trust or for the benefit of any other person.

53. That if any governor, chancellor, judge, register of wills, register of the land office, commissioner of the loan office, register of the chancery court, or any clerk of the common law courts, treasurer, naval officer, sheriff, surveyor, or auditor of public accounts, shall receive, directly or indirectly, at any time, the profits, or any part of the profits, of any office held by any other person during his acting in the office to which he is appointed, his election, appointment and commission, on conviction in a court of law by the oath or affirmation, of two credible witnesses, shall be void, and he shall suffer the punishment for wilful and corrupt perjury, or be banished this state for ever, or disqualified for ever from holding any office or place of trust or profit, as the court may adjudge.

54. That if any person shall give any bribe, present or reward, or any promise, or any security for the payment or delivery of any money, or any other thing, to obtain or procure a vote, to be governor, senator, delegate to congress or assembly, member of the council, or judge, or to be appointed to any of the said offices, or to any office of profit or trust, now created, or hereafter to be created, in this state, the person giving, and the person receiving the same, on conviction in a court of law, shall be for ever disqualified to hold any office of trust or profit in this state.

55. That every person appointed to any office of profit or trust shall, before he enters on the execution thereof, take the following oath, or affirmation, to wit: "I, A. B. do swear, (or, I, A. B. do affirm,) that I do not hold myself bound in allegiance to the king of

Great Britain, and that I will be faithful and bear true allegiance to the state of Maryland;" and shall also subscribe a declaration of his belief in the Christian Religion.

56. That there shall be a court of appeals, composed of persons of integrity, and sound judgment in the law, whose judgment shall be final and conclusive in all cases of appeal from the county courts, court of chancery, and court of admiralty, and the same shall be composed of the chief judges of the several judicial districts of the state; which said court of appeals shall hold, use and exercise, all and singular the powers, authorities and jurisdictions, heretofore held, used and exercised, by the court of appeals of this state, and also the appellate jurisdiction heretofore used and exercised by the general court; and the said court of appeals hereby established, shall sit on the western and eastern shores for transacting and determining the business of the respective shores, at such times and places as the future legislature of this state shall direct and appoint; and any three of the said judges of the court of appeals shall form a quorum to hear and decide in all cases pending in said court; and the judge who has given a decision in any case in the county court, shall withdraw from the bench upon the deciding of the same case before the court of appeals. That one person of integrity, and sound judgment in the law, be appointed chancellor. That this state shall be divided into six judicial districts, in manner and form following, to wit: Saint Mary's, Charles and Prince George's counties, shall be the first district; Cecil, Kent, Queen Anne's and Talbot counties, shall be the second district; Calvert, Anne Arundel and Montgomery counties, shall be the third district; Caroline, Dorchester, Somerset and Worcester counties, shall be the fourth district; Frederick, Washington and Allegany counties, shall be the fifth district; Baltimore and Harford counties, shall be the sixth district; and there shall be appointed, for each of the said judicial districts, three persons of integrity and sound legal knowledge, residents of the state of Maryland, who

shall, previous to and during their acting as judges, reside in the district for which they shall respectively be appointed, one of whom shall be styled in the commission Chief Judge, and the other two Associate Judges, of the district for which they shall be appointed; and the chief judge together with the two associate judges, shall compose the county courts in each respective district; and each judge shall hold his commission during good behaviour, removable for misbehaviour on conviction in a court of law, or shall be removed by the governor, upon the address of the general assembly, provided that two thirds of all the members of each house concur in such address; and the county courts, so as aforesaid established, shall have, hold and exercise, in the several counties of this state, all and every the powers, authorities and jurisdictions, which the county courts of this state now have, use and exercise, and which shall be hereafter prescribed by law; and the said county courts shall respectively hold their sessions in the several counties at such times and places as the legislature shall direct and appoint; and the salaries of the said judges shall not be diminished during the period of their continuance in office.

57. That the style of all laws run thus: "Be it enacted by the General Assembly of Maryland." That all public commissions and grants run thus: "The State of Maryland," &c. and shall be signed by the governor, and attested by the chancellor, with the seal of the state annexed, except military and militia commissions, which shall not be attested by the chancellor, or have the seal of the state annexed. That all writs shall run in the same style, and be tested, sealed and signed, as usual. That all indictments shall conclude, "against the peace, government and dignity of the state."

58. That all penalties and forfeitures heretofore going to the king, or proprietary, shall go to the state, save only such as the general assembly may abolish or otherwise provide for.

59. That this form of government and the declaration of rights, and no part thereof, shall be altered, changed or abolished unless a bill so to alter, change or abolish the same, shall pass the general assembly, and be published

at least three months before a new election, and shall be confirmed by the general assembly after a new election of delegates, in the first session after such new election; provided that nothing in this form of government, which relates to the eastern shore particularly, shall at any time hereafter be altered, unless for the alteration and confirmation thereof at least two thirds of all the members of each branch of the general assembly shall concur.

60. That every bill passed by the general assembly, when engrossed, shall be presented by the speaker of the house of delegates, in the senate, to the governor for the time being, who shall sign the same, and thereto affix the great seal, in the presence of the members of both houses. Every law shall be recorded in the office of the court of appeals of the western shore, and in due time printed, published and certified, under the great seal, to the several county courts, in the same manner as hath been heretofore used in this state.

61. (a)

62. That every person, being a member of either of the religious sects or societies called Quakers, Menonists, Tunkers, or Nicolites or New Quakers, and who shall be conscientiously scrupulous of taking an oath on any occasion, being otherwise qualified and duly elected a senator, delegate, or elector of the senate, or being otherwise qualified and duly appointed or elected to any office of profit

(a) This section, for introducing the new government, directed that an election be held for the electors of the senate on Monday the 25th of November 1776, and that the electors meet at Annapolis on Monday the 9th of December 1776, and there choose senators; that an election be held on Wednesday the 18th of December 1776, for delegates to serve in general assembly, and for sheriffs; and prescribed the manner, &c. of holding the said elections, and to whom the returns should be made. That the general assembly should meet at Annapolis on Monday the 10th of February 1777, and then choose a governor and council for the residue of the year; and prescribed the manner of filling, in the first instance only, all the offices in the disposition of the governor with the advice of the council. Which provisions ceasing to have any operation, the section is left blank, but the number is retained in order to preserve the original numbers of the constitution.

or trust, on making affirmation instead of taking the several oaths appointed by the constitution and form of government, and the several acts of assembly of this state now in force, or that hereafter may be made, such person may hold and exercise any office of profit or trust to which he may be appointed or elected, and may, by such affirmation, qualify himself to take a seat in the legislature, and to act therein as a member of the same in all cases whatever, or to be an elector of the senate in as full and ample a manner, to all intents and purposes whatever, as persons are now competent and qualified to act who are not conscientiously scrupulous of taking such oaths.

63. That the people called Quakers, those called Nicolites or New Quakers, those called Tunkers, and those called Menonists, holding it unlawful to take an oath on any occasion, shall be allowed to make their solemn affirmation as witnesses, in the manner that Quakers have been heretofore allowed to affirm, which affirmation shall be of the same avail as an oath, to all intents and purposes whatever. That before any of the persons aforesaid shall be admitted as a witness in any court of justice in this state, the court shall be satisfied, by such testimony as they may require, that such person is one of those who profess to be conscientiously scrupulous of taking an oath.

64. That in any suit or action at law hereafter to be commenced or instituted in any county court of this state, the judges thereof, upon suggestion in writing, by either of the parties thereto, supported by affidavit, or other proper evidence, that a fair and impartial trial cannot be had in the county court of the county where such suit or action is depending, shall and may order and direct the record of their proceedings in such suit or action to be transmitted to the judges of any county court within the district for trial, and the judges of such county court, to whom the said record shall be transmitted, shall hear and determine the same in like manner as if such suit or action had been originally instituted therein; Provided nevertheless, that such suggestion shall be made as aforesaid before or during the term in which the issue or issues may be joined in said suit or action; And provided also, that such further remedy may be provided by law in the premises as the le-

gislature shall from time to time direct and enact. That if any party prosecuted or indicted in any of the county courts of this state, shall suggest in writing, to the court in which such prosecution is depending, that a fair and impartial trial cannot be had in such court, it shall and may be lawful for the said court to order and direct the record of their proceedings in the said prosecution to be transmitted to the judges of any adjoining county court for trial, and the judges of such adjoining county court shall hear and determine the same in the same manner as if such prosecution had been originally instituted therein; provided, that such further and other remedy may be provided by law in the premises as the legislature may direct and enact. That if the attorney-general, or the prosecutor for the state, shall suggest in writing, to any county court before whom an indictment is or may be depending, that the state cannot have a fair and impartial trial in such court, it shall and may be lawful for the said court in their discretion, to order and direct the record of their proceedings in the said prosecution to be transmitted to the judges of any adjoining county court for trial, and the judges of such county court shall hear and determine the same as if such prosecution had been originally instituted therein.

65. That all persons professing the Christian Religion, who hold it unlawful to take an oath on any occasion, shall be allowed to make their solemn affirmation, in the same manner that Quakers have heretofore been allowed to affirm, which affirmation shall be of the same avail as an oath in all intents and purposes whatever. That before any such person shall be admitted as a witness or juror in any court of justice in this state, the court shall be satisfied, by competent testimony, that such person is conscientiously scrupulous of taking an oath.

66. That in all appointments to be hereafter made by the executive, it shall be the duty of the governor, and he is hereby required, to nominate, and by and with the advice and consent of the council, appoint, all such officers as are directed to be appointed by the executive, either by the constitution or laws of this state.

hat
ny
ort,
ia-
may
cord
mit-
rial,
hear
pro-
ded,
d by
nact.
for
court
that
such
their
ceed-
ndges
es of
as if
n.
gion,
sion,
n the
owed
ail as
be-
as or
shall
on is

e by
and
h the
n of-
tive,